





THE LIBRARY  
OF  
THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA  
LOS ANGELES

The CELLAR BOOK SHOP  
Box 6, College Park Sta.  
Detroit 21, Mich. - U. S. A.





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







A GRAMMAR OF THE HAUSA  
LANGUAGE

*BY THE SAME AUTHOR*

---

**THE LANGUAGES OF WEST AFRICA.**

2 vols. Demy 8vo. Each 12s. 6d. net.

A linguistic survey of about three hundred languages and dialects, with Classification and inquiry into their origin.

**THE MENDE LANGUAGE**, including Grammar, Vocabularies, Useful Phrases, and Reading Exercises. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. net.

**A MENDE NATURAL HISTORY VOCABULARY.** A description of the Fauna and Flora of the District, with Notes. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

---

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.

A GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
HAUSA LANGUAGE

BY

FREDERICK WILLIAM HUGH MIGEOD

AUTHOR OF "THE LANGUAGES OF WEST AFRICA," "THE MENDE LANGUAGE,"  
AND "MENDE NATURAL HISTORY VOCABULARY."

LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.

BROADWAY HOUSE, 68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

1914



## PREFACE

THIS Grammar is primarily for students who have already acquired some knowledge of the Hausa language.

In its compilation the Author has been at pains to make the vocabulary as diversified as possible, so that there are few words in common use that have not been made use of.

All rules, too, have been fully illustrated, and, as regards such as have only been slightly noticed by other writers, the Author has for preference selected sentences from texts to which all students of the language have access. In this way the existence of the rules themselves is more readily recognised.

The origin of the Hausa language is not inquired into here, and etymologies are only occasionally examined. Both of these subjects were discussed by the Author in his recently-published work, "The Languages of West Africa," and a repetition seemed somewhat unnecessary.

The same observation applies to the native script, which is Arabic slightly modified. It would have been

of little use to give here the alphabet alone, unless accompanied by instructions for its use and by literary specimens with transliterations, translations, and critical notes; and to treat this subject adequately a great deal of space would be required: hence its entire omission.

The proof-sheets of this work have been read by the Author's brother, Mr Charles Migeod, 2nd class Resident in Northern Nigeria.

F. W. H. MIGEOD.

GOLD COAST COLONY,

*March* 1914



# CONTENTS

|                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| PREFACE . . . . . | PAGE<br>. vii |
|-------------------|---------------|

## CHAPTER I

### PHONETIC NOTES

#### *Part I.—ACCENT*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Penultimate—Ultimate—Antepenultimate—Movement of . . . . . | 1 |
|--|---|

#### *Part II.—INTERCHANGEABILITY OF LETTERS*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Consonants—Vowels—Omission of Syllables . . . . . | 3 |
|---|---|

## CHAPTER II

### NOUN

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Nature of . . . . . | 9 |
|---------------------|---|

#### *Part I.—DERIVATION OF NOUNS*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Simple—Derived—Description of Classes of Derived . . . . . | 9 |
|--|---|

#### *Part II.—GENDER*

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Remarks on—Exceptions for—Gender in Neighbouring<br>Languages—Common Gender—List of Nouns ending in<br>“a” which are Masculine . . . . . | 16 |
|--|----|

*Part III.—NUMBER*

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Methods for forming Plural—Terminations—Plurals of Simple Nouns—of Verbal Nouns—of Compound Nouns—Nouns without Plural—Nouns without Singular—Use of Singular for Plural—Plural Forms with Singular Meaning . . . . . | 20 |
|---|----|

*Part IV.—CASE*

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Remarks on — Nominative and Accusative — Vocative — Genitive—Dative—Ablative—Locative . . . . . | 44 |
|---|----|

## CHAPTER III

## ADJECTIVE

|  |    |
|--|----|
| General Remarks—Simple Adjectives—Compound Adjectives—Present Participle—Past Participle—Nouns used as Adjectives—Reduplication—Syntax—Predicative Use—Circumlocution to avoid Use of Adjectives—Comparison—Numerals . . . . . | 49 |
|--|----|

## CHAPTER IV

## PRONOUN

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Personal—Relative—Demonstrative—Final “n” with Nouns—Interrogative—Indefinite—Reflexive—Emphatic—Reciprocal . . . . . | 72 |
|---|----|

## CHAPTER V

## VERB

*Part I.—DERIVATION*

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Description of Classes of Derived Verbs . . . . . | 101 |
|---|-----|

CONTENTS

xi

*Part II.*—DIVISION OF VERBS

PAGE

Transitive—Intransitive . . . . . 116

*Part III.*—AUXILIARY VERBS 119

*Part IV.*—CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

Remarks on—Conjugation—Uses of the Tenses—Passive  
Voice—Infinitive—Present Participle—Past Participle—  
Verbal Adverbs—Use of Inverted Personal Pronoun—  
Impersonal Verbs . . . . . 125

CHAPTER VI

ADVERBS

Remarks on—Adverbs of Place—Time—Manner—Affirmation  
and Negation—Interrogation . . . . . 158

CHAPTER VII

PREPOSITIONS

Simple—Compound—Examples of Uses—Omission of . . . 183

CHAPTER VIII

CONJUNCTIONS

Co-ordinating—Subordinating—Nouns (with Particles) used  
in Sense of Conjunctions—Examples of Uses . . . . . 201

CHAPTER IX

INTERJECTIONS

208

## CHAPTER X

## SYNTAX

## THE SUBJECT

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| Nature of—Examples—Simple—Compound . . . . . | 210  |

## THE PREDICATE

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Simple, Nature of and Examples — Compound — Special<br>Notes on . . . . . | 211 |
|---|-----|

## THE OBJECT

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Direct, Nature of, and Examples—Double—Indirect . . . . . | 214 |
|---|-----|

## NATURE OF SENTENCES

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Affirmative—Negative—Interrogative—Compound . . . . . | 216 |
|---|-----|

## CHAPTER XI

## COMMON IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS, ETC.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Salutations—Seasons, Months, Days, Hours—Che—Chika—<br>Chi—Da—Dama—Damre—Dau—Kai—Kara—Maida<br>—Sha—Sa—Samu—Saura—Yi—Examples of Circum-<br>locution . . . . . | 219 |
|--|-----|

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . . | 229 |
|------------------------|-----|

# A GRAMMAR OF THE HAUSA LANGUAGE

---

## CHAPTER I

### PHONETIC NOTES

#### *PART I*

#### ACCENT, POSITION OF

##### PENULTIMATE

The stress accent is as a general rule on the penultimate syllable.

##### ULTIMATE

1. It is on the last syllable in some few words, as “kadán,” *little*.

2. In nouns taking the plural termination “ai.”

3. In verb forms ending in “a” or “o” as vowels of direction.

4. When final “s” is added to a verb for “voice” purposes, as “zubás,” from “zuba,” *to pour*.

##### ANTEPENULTIMATE

There are similarly a few words that take the accent on the antepenultimate, as—

Mágani *medicine*

Tákalmi *shoe*

Táberma *mat*

## MOVEMENT OF ACCENT

1. When an objective pronoun follows the verb, joined by "n," as in Present tense No. I., it takes the nature of a suffix to the verb, and the accent is shifted to the new penultimate syllable—

*Ina dubánsa I am looking at him*

2. When a word is reduplicated the accent usually moves to the last syllable—

*Chiyé-chiyé plural of infinitive form of "chi" to eat*  
*Mazá-mazá quickly; but if not emphasised it remains*  
*"máza-máza"*

In reduplicated colour adjectives, however, the accent does not move.

3. In some derived nouns the accent moves towards the suffix; in not a few, however, it remains unaltered—

|               |                 |      |             |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sáyowa</i> | <i>selling</i>  | from | <i>sáye</i> | <i>to sell</i>  |
| <i>Jefáwa</i> | <i>throwing</i> | „    | <i>jéfa</i> | <i>to throw</i> |

In the latter the final vowel is long, and so rather attracts the stress accent.

4. In some plural forms the accent remains on the same syllable as in the singular form, though the rule is that it should move towards the suffix—

|               |               |      |             |
|---------------|---------------|------|-------------|
| <i>Wátani</i> | <i>months</i> | from | <i>wata</i> |
| <i>Hánaye</i> | <i>hands</i>  | „    | <i>hanu</i> |
| <i>Hánua</i>  | <i>hands</i>  | „    | <i>hanu</i> |

5. If "mai-" is prefixed to a noun or verb, it still remains an accented syllable, and so the word if it is prefixed to does not change its accentuation—

|                  |                          |      |               |
|------------------|--------------------------|------|---------------|
| <i>Maimágani</i> | <i>doctor</i>            | from | <i>mágani</i> |
| <i>Maimagána</i> | <i>a person speaking</i> | „    | <i>magána</i> |
| <i>Maidóki</i>   | <i>horseman</i>          | „    | <i>dóki</i>   |
| <i>Maigaskía</i> | <i>man of truth</i>      | „    | <i>gaskía</i> |

PART II

INTERCHANGEABILITY OF LETTERS

CONSONANTS

(1) *Variation of Consonants*

Some variations are merely local peculiarities.

*L, R, T*

These letters are interchangeable in Hausa, for phonetic reasons, the same as they are in other negro languages.

The word in most common use subject to this variation is the preposition "na," *of*. In the feminine gender it is "ta," which is commonly shortened to "t," and "t" in its turn may become "l" or "r." For instance—

Ya-t-malam, Ya-l-malam, Ya-r-malam, *the mallam's daughter,*" are all equally correct.

Biar, bial, and biat, *five,* are all heard.

Halbi, harbi, *to shoot;* and in Maiharabi for Maihalbi, *shooter,* an exaggeration of the "r" sound is shown.

This emphasis of the "r" sound is also found in connection with the preposition "of," chiefly if not entirely in the Hausa spoken in the more northerly parts. It is especially found after a long "a." For instance—

Mine kameriki ?            *What caught you ?*

Kameriki = kamarki = kamaki

*R, S*

|           |             |                          |
|-----------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Sayer     | sayes       | <i>sell</i>              |
| Sayeruwa  | sayesuwa    | <i>selling</i>           |
| Arna      | asna        | <i>heathen</i>           |
| Yer       | yes         | <i>throw away</i>        |
| Hasso uku | har so-uku  | <i>up to three times</i> |
| Zuchiasu  | zuchia-l-su | <i>their heart</i>       |

*N or another letter for S*

|                    |     |                    |                            |
|--------------------|-----|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Benne              |     | bisne              | <i>burial</i>              |
| Muka tarad da yaki | for | Muka taras da yaki | <i>We joined in battle</i> |

*P and F*

|        |                              |              |
|--------|------------------------------|--------------|
| Fashe  | pashe                        | <i>break</i> |
| Tafshi | tapshi (also tabshi, taushi) | <i>soft</i>  |

*F and H (H is Katsina dialect).*

|             |            |                     |
|-------------|------------|---------------------|
| Fudu        | hudu       | <i>four</i>         |
| Funtu       | huntu      | <i>naked person</i> |
| Tafi        | tahi       | <i>go</i>           |
| Bafellanchi | bahillachi | <i>Fula</i>         |

*T, K, R*

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Tutut, tutuk, tutur, tutu | <i>for ever</i> |
|---------------------------|-----------------|

*N and M, the latter before a labial.*

|           |               |                             |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Kulun     | kulum         | <i>always</i>               |
| Em bika ? | for En bika ? | <i>Shall I follow you ?</i> |

*T, Ch, S*

|                 |         |               |
|-----------------|---------|---------------|
| Wotika, wochika | wosika  | <i>letter</i> |
| Tasubi          | chasubi | <i>bead</i>   |

It is often doubtful whether "ts" or "ch" should be written, though any doubt that there may be vanishes when the word is seen written in Arabic character.

In this connection it should be noted that the Arabic "ta" or "tsa" is often written in Hausa for "dal," and "shin" for "cha."

*Gb for B*

A very few words admit "gb" for "b," some speakers sounding the "g" where others do not. The "gb" is a sound of pure negro origin—

|        |       |                |
|--------|-------|----------------|
| Gbache | bache | <i>destroy</i> |
| Gboye  | boye  | <i>hide</i>    |



(2) *Vocalisation of Consonants*

In some parts of the Hausa country two consonants coming together are readily admitted. Elsewhere, especially nearer other negro influences, such combinations are not much found. Two alternatives exist—either to insert an intermediate vowel harmonising with the other vowels in the word, or to vocalise the first consonant of the two. Nearer Arabic or Berber influences the harder forms are always found, but a negro of another tribe learning Hausa invariably uses one of the softer forms.

It might possibly be supposed that it is the original form of the word which has the intermediate vowel, and that this vowel is eliminated to make the harder form. That the reverse is the case is made clear by the position of the accent, which is on the penultimate in the shorter form of the word, and remains on the same syllable, which becomes the antepenultimate, in the longer form of the word.

The following are examples of the two processes—

|              |                     |                  |
|--------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Sarki        | sariki              | <i>chief</i>     |
| Ber          | beri                | <i>leave</i>     |
| Duk          | duka                | <i>all</i>       |
| Girma        | girima              | <i>big</i>       |
| Damre        | darime, daure, dore | <i>bind</i>      |
| Amre         | aure                | <i>marry</i>     |
| Samri, samli | sauri               | <i>hasten</i>    |
| Samri        | sauri               | <i>young man</i> |
| Kamna        | kauna, kona         | <i>love</i>      |
| Takalma      | takoma              | <i>shoe</i>      |
| Zamna        | zona                | <i>sit</i>       |

It may here be noted that syllables ending in a consonant occur more commonly in the middle of a word than at the end, the tendency being, as here seen, to eliminate or soften them—

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Mafelfechi     | <i>fans</i>     |
| Sarki (sariki) | <i>chief</i>    |
| Tutuk (tutu)   | <i>for ever</i> |

(3) *Insertion of Semi-vowels after Consonants*

“W” is commonly inserted after “k” and “g” when followed by “o”—

|              |     |       |                   |
|--------------|-----|-------|-------------------|
| Akwoi        | for | akoi  | <i>there is</i>   |
| Gwonda       |     | gonda | <i>pawpaw</i>     |
| Kwoi         |     | koi   | <i>egg</i>        |
| Kwomi (rare) |     | komi  | <i>everything</i> |
| Kwoiya       |     | koiya | <i>teach</i>      |

The semi-vowel “y” may be introduced after “k” and “g” before “i” and “e.” This usage seems due to the influence of other negro languages. It is comparatively rare in the purest forms of Hausa, if the more northerly be taken as such, but it is found to be almost invariably made use of in the speech of negroes of tribes to the south-west when they speak Hausa. This is especially so in the Gold Coast Colony.

|                |     |                        |                  |
|----------------|-----|------------------------|------------------|
| Chauta, kyauta | for | keauta (written kauta) | <i>a present</i> |
| Kyetu          | „   | ketu                   | <i>flint</i>     |
| Kyanwa         | „   | kenwa                  | <i>cat</i>       |
| Gyero          | „   | gyero                  | <i>corn</i>      |

Nevertheless this introduction of a semi-vowel plays a very considerable part in the formation of nouns derived from verbs in Hausa, indicating that this same influence existed long ago, even if there has been an interval in which it has ceased to operate.

For example, when the root of a word ends in “t,” the final vowel being “a” or “o,” and for some grammatical reason this vowel is changed to “e” or “i,” a “y” sound creeps in, with the effect of adding a sibilation—

|         |                  |                |
|---------|------------------|----------------|
| Sata    | sache=satye      | <i>steal</i>   |
| Bata    | bache=batye      | <i>destroy</i> |
| Kotanta | kotanche=kotanty | <i>compare</i> |

This is very clearly seen in the participles—

|     |                        |                  |
|-----|------------------------|------------------|
|     | Batache=batatye        | <i>destroyed</i> |
|     | Batachia (f.)=batatyia |                  |
| But | Batatu (plu.)          |                  |

For the same reason are—

|       |                   |              |
|-------|-------------------|--------------|
| Tarsa | tarshe=tarsye     | <i>help</i>  |
| Hausa | bahausha=bahausye | <i>Hausa</i> |

*Contraction of W and Y*

These semi-vowels are often elided either in a derived word or even when two words come together, the latter applying to “y.” It is often doubtful whether it is more correct to write them or to omit them. It must, however, be observed that their insertion seems preferable in some words, and it is better to omit them in others—

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Tafowa=tafoa    | <i>coming</i>     |
| Tafiya=tafia    | <i>going</i>      |
| Zanowa=zanoa    | <i>cloths</i>     |
| Gaisuwa=gaisua  | <i>salutation</i> |
| Sunkai=sunka yi | <i>they did</i>   |

The appearance of “w” or “y” in the verbal nouns depends on the associated vowels;—“a,” “o,” “u” requiring “w”; “i” requiring “y”; and “e” either. This interchangeability is seen in “na wuni”=“na yini,” *I spend the day.*

VOWELS

(1) *Variation of Vowels*

There is a great tendency in Hausa to use short vowels, and many words are pronounced indifferently with long and short sounds.

This practice may be possibly due to the former existence of closed syllables now no longer recognisable. That they have existed, however, may be seen from such words as “tutuk,” or “tutu,” *for ever.*

A

“A” is in many words so short as to seem also “e” or “u.”

|         |     |         |                |
|---------|-----|---------|----------------|
| Teffi   | for | tafi    | <i>go</i>      |
| Serki   | „   | sarki   | <i>chief</i>   |
| Dere    | „   | dare    | <i>night</i>   |
| Seyesua | „   | sayesua | <i>selling</i> |
| Mini    | „   | mani    | <i>to me</i>   |
| Fudda   | „   | fada    | <i>tell</i>    |

The prefix "mai-" is usually pronounced as "may" in English, and not as the sound in the word "might."

*A and O*

Waje=woje *side*      Wani=woni *another*      Wannan=wonan *this*

*A and U*

Mamu=mumu      *to us*      Maku=muku      *to you*

*I and U*

Filani (Hillani)=Fulani, *Fulas*      Fukafuke=fikafike      *feather*  
Rufe=riffe      *call*      Mutane=mittane      *men*

(2) *Omission of Vowels*

Final "i" is the one most commonly elided. This usually takes place when an objective pronoun is joined to the verb—

|                |                   |                          |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Ban san'shi ba | Ba na sani shi ba | <i>I do not know him</i> |
| Na gan'shi     | Na gani shi       | <i>I saw him</i>         |
| Ber'shi        | Beri shi          | <i>Let him</i>           |

The first personal pronoun "ni" is shortened to "n" in "zani"—

Zan' for Zani      *I will go*

Other elisions—

|                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Gareshi=garesa=garuss | <i>towards him</i>       |
| Masa=muss             | <i>to him</i>            |
| Akasa=akass           | <i>on the ground</i>     |
| Ya manche tagia tass  | <i>He forgot his hat</i> |

*Omission of Syllables*

There are found both long and short forms of words. The short forms are usually poetical—

Dau, do, for dauka      *take up.*

## CHAPTER II

### NOUN

NOUNS are simple and derived. They have gender and number, but are not inflected for case.

#### PART I

##### DERIVATION OF NOUNS

Simple nouns are those of which the origin cannot be traced beyond the present form—

|      |             |        |                 |
|------|-------------|--------|-----------------|
| Gona | <i>farm</i> | karifi | <i>strength</i> |
|------|-------------|--------|-----------------|

Derivatives are such nouns as can be traced to their primary parts—

|          |               |            |                   |
|----------|---------------|------------|-------------------|
| Mai-gona | <i>farmer</i> | Mai-karifi | <i>strong man</i> |
|----------|---------------|------------|-------------------|

All infinitives may be used substantively without change of form—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Kedaya-n-sa da wuya                    | <i>To count it is difficult (lit., counting of him with difficulty)</i>      |
| Chi-n-sa da dadi                       | <i>It is nice to eat</i>   |
| Fade-fade ba yi ba (proverb)           | <i>Talking is no good</i>  |
| Do-n-so, ya rasulu, domi-n-so-n-fiyaye | <i>Because of love, O Prophet, because of love of God (lit., Excellence)</i> |

(For further examples see under the Verb (Infinitive).)

Derivation of nouns takes place by means of prefixes and suffixes, and sometimes by means of both together.

Derived nouns are formed in the following ways :—

*Concrete nouns—*

1. Noun with personal particle prefixed.
2. Noun with material particle prefixed.
3. Verb with personal particle prefixed.
4. Verb with material particle prefixed.

*Abstract nouns—*

5. Verb with prefix.
6. Noun with suffix.
7. Verb or adjective with suffix.

*Verbal nouns—*

8. With suffix or unchanged.

*Concrete nouns—*

9. Feminine nouns derived from masculine form.
10. Nouns ending in “ ya.”
11. Compound nouns.
12. Adjective used as noun.
13. Noun phrases.

*Description of Classes of Derived Nouns*

1. *Concrete nouns formed from other nouns with personal particle prefixed.*—There are four particles relating to persons : “ ba,” “ da,” “ mai,” “ ma.”

*Ba*

“ Ba ” means inhabitant of a country, and is compounded with place names for the most part—

|           |                  |          |                    |
|-----------|------------------|----------|--------------------|
| Ba-haushe | <i>Hausa man</i> | Ba-hausa | <i>Hausa woman</i> |
| Ba-kano   | <i>Kano man</i>  | Bature   | <i>white man</i>   |

(Further examples are given in the tables of plurals.)

*Da (“ ya ” feminine)*

“ Da,” meaning *child*, is compounded with place names when it means *native of*. With other nouns it acts as

a diminutive. Unlike "ba," the preposition "n," of, is inserted—

|            |                       |             |                           |
|------------|-----------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Da-n-Kano  | <i>native of Kano</i> | Da-n-birni  | <i>native of the city</i> |
| Da-n-akwia | <i>kid</i>            | Da-n-zunzua | <i>a little bird</i>      |

Feminine.

Ya-l-Kano *femal: native of Kano, daughter of Kano*

Also in some idiomatic cases.

Da-n-zane *a fragment of cloth*      Da-n-bindiga *soldier*

### Mai

"Mai" means *owner of* or *doer*, and expresses the agent, as—

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| Mai-gona   | <i>owner of a farm</i>                                   |
| Mai-gaskia | <i>a man of truth, or one speaking the truth</i>         |
| Mai-wayo   | <i>a cunning person</i>                                  |
| Mai-shi    | <i>the owner of it (shi is the 3rd personal pronoun)</i> |

NOTE. — "Mai" also forms adjectives and the present participle, which see.

### Ma

"Ma" is a personal partiele as well as a material partiele. It has a similar sense to "mai," as a personal partiele, but it is not compounded with nouns in their simple form—

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mafauta,    | <i>butcher</i> , from <i>fauta, slaughter</i> , itself derived from <i>fawa, to slaughter</i> |
| Mafauchi,   | <i>butcher</i> , from <i>fawa (fauchi is not found)</i>                                       |
| Makaranchi, | <i>scholar</i> , from <i>karanta, to read (karanchi is not found)</i>                         |

2. *Concrete nouns with material particle prefixed.*—There is only one prefix, "ma-."

As in the preceding class, it is prefixed, not to the pure noun form, but to a derived form—

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Matsorachi, | <i>cowardice</i> , from <i>tsorachi</i> , which is a derivation of <i>tsoro, to fear</i> , but is not found alone |
| Mafauta,    | <i>place of slaughter</i> , from <i>fauta, slaughter</i> .  |

3. *Concrete nouns formed from a verb with a personal particle prefixed.*—These particles are “mai” and “ma”—

|               |                                |      |       |                 |
|---------------|--------------------------------|------|-------|-----------------|
| Maihalbi      | <i>marksmen, hunter</i>        | from | halbi | <i>to shoot</i> |
| Maikoiyo      | <i>learner</i>                 | „    | koiyo | <i>to learn</i> |
| Mai-aski      | <i>one that shaves</i>         | „    | aski  | <i>to shave</i> |
| Mai-giri-baba | <i>she of the big eyebrows</i> |      |       |                 |

### Ma

The final vowel is “i” generally—

|         |                                |      |       |                              |
|---------|--------------------------------|------|-------|------------------------------|
| Makami  | <i>one that catches</i>        | from | kama  | <i>to catch</i>              |
| Makiyi  | <i>hater</i>                   | „    | ki    | <i>to hate</i>               |
| Makoiyi | <i>teacher</i>                 | „    | koiya | <i>to teach</i>              |
| Makeri  | <i>blacksmith</i>              | „    | kira  | <i>to forge</i>              |
| Maso    | <i>one that loves</i>          | „    | so    | <i>to love, to want</i>      |
| Makiayi | <i>herdsman</i>                | „    | kiwo  | <i>to tend cattle</i>        |
| Makiaji | <i>one who refuses to hear</i> | „    | ki    | <i>to refuse, ji to hear</i> |

4. *Concrete nouns formed from verb with material particle prefixed.*—These are the particle “ma,” and also the nouns “abu,” *thing*, and “wuri,” *place*.

### Ma

The final vowel of the verb changes to “i”—

|         |                      |      |       |                          |
|---------|----------------------|------|-------|--------------------------|
| Madafi  | <i>kitchen</i>       | from | dafa  | <i>to cook</i>           |
| Madubi  | <i>looking-glass</i> | „    | duba  | <i>to look at</i>        |
| Makami  | <i>trap</i>          | „    | kama  | <i>to catch</i>          |
| Mashidi | <i>halting-place</i> | „    | shida | <i>alight, to encamp</i> |
| Mazamni | <i>seat</i>          | „    | zamna | <i>to sit down</i>       |

### Abu, Thing

The preposition “n,” *of*, enters into the composition of the word, and “abu” usually takes the form “abi,” which is never found alone—

|                                |                          |      |        |                             |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------|--------|-----------------------------|
| Abi-n-chi                      | <i>food</i>              | from | chi    | <i>to eat</i>               |
| Abi-n-sha                      | <i>drink</i>             | „    | sha    | <i>to drink</i>             |
| Abin-mamaki or<br>Abu-n-mamaki | <i>a wonder, miracle</i> | „    | mamaki | <i>a marvel (is a noun)</i> |
| Abin-sara                      | <i>accusation</i>        | „    | sara   | <i>to accuse</i>            |
| Abin-tsoro                     | <i>a thing to fear</i>   | „    | tsoro  | <i>to fear</i>              |
| Abin-worigi                    | <i>plaything</i>         | „    | worigi | <i>play (a noun)</i>        |



*Wuri, Place.*

This prefix also requires the preposition "of"—

|               |                       |      |        |   |
|---------------|-----------------------|------|--------|---|
| Wuri-n-kwana  | <i>sleeping-place</i> | from | kwana  | <i>to sleep</i>                               |
| Wuri-n-kiwo   | <i>pasture</i>        |      | kiwo   | <i>to feed cattle</i>                         |
| Wuri-n-rubutu | <i>writing-place</i>  |      | rubutu | <i>to write</i>                               |
| Wuri-n-sabka  | <i>halting-place</i>  |      | sabka  | <i>to alight</i>                              |
| Wuri-n-shida  | <i>halting-place</i>  |      | shida  | <i>to alight, (i.e., from horse or camel)</i> |

5. *Abstract nouns formed from verbs with prefix "ma-."*—

The final vowel becomes "i"—

|        |                  |      |      |                  |
|--------|------------------|------|------|------------------|
| Makari | <i>end</i>       | from | kare | <i>to finish</i> |
| Mahani | <i>hindrance</i> | „    | hana | <i>to hinder</i> |
| Mafari | <i>beginning</i> | „    | fara | <i>to begin</i>  |

6. *Abstract nouns can be formed from concrete simple nouns with the suffixes—*

-chi (m.) and -ta (f.)

-n-chi (m.) -n-taka (f.) "n" being the preposition of

"-N-chi" is of Kano origin and "-n-taka" of Sokoto origin—

-chi (m.) and -ta (f.)

|        |         |                       |      |        |                  |
|--------|---------|-----------------------|------|--------|------------------|
| Bauchi | bauta   | <i>slavery</i>        | from | bawa   | <i>slave</i>     |
|        | kauta   | <i>present beauty</i> | „    | keao   | <i>beauty</i>    |
|        | kariata | <i>lying</i>          | „    | karia  | <i>lie</i>       |
|        | makafta | <i>blindness</i>      | „    | makafo | <i>blind man</i> |
|        | wauta   | <i>folly</i>          | „    | wawa   | <i>fool</i>      |
|        | sarauta | <i>kingdom</i>        | „    | sariki | <i>king</i>      |

-n-chi (m.) -n-taka (f.)

|                         |            |                                  |        |                                   |
|-------------------------|------------|----------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| Bakunchi                | bakuntaka  | <i>strangeness</i>               | bako   | <i>stranger</i>                   |
| Baranchi                | barantaka  | <i>service</i>                   | bara   | <i>servant</i>                    |
| Daianchi                | daiantaka  | <i>singleness</i>                | daia   | <i>one</i>                        |
| Diyanchi or<br>diyauchi | diyantaka  | <i>freedom</i>                   | diya   | <i>free person,<br/>offspring</i> |
| Gadonchi                | gadontaka  | <i>inheritance</i><br>(abstract) | gado   | <i>inheritance</i><br>(concrete)  |
| Malanchi                | malantaka  | <i>priestcraft</i>               | malam  | <i>priest</i>                     |
| Raganchi                | ragantaka  | <i>laziness</i>                  | rago   | <i>idler</i>                      |
| Sarkanchi               | sarkantaka | <i>kingship</i>                  | sariki | <i>king</i>                       |
| Tsiranchi               | tsirantaka | <i>safety, salvation</i>         | tsira  | <i>save</i>                       |
| Ubanchi                 | ubantaka   | <i>fatherhood</i>                | uba    | <i>father</i>                     |

|           |           |                                  |          |                            |
|-----------|-----------|----------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|
| Yaranchi  | yarantaka | youth (abstract)                 | yaro     | boy                        |
| Yawanchi  | yawantaka | multiplicity                     | yawa     | many                       |
| Zarumchi  | zarumtaka | bravery                          | zarumi   | brave man,                 |
|           |           |                                  | or zarmi | body-guard                 |
| Fulanchi  |           | what belongs to<br>the Fula      | Fula     | Fula                       |
| Hausanchi |           | what belongs to<br>the Hausa     | Hausa    | Hausa                      |
| Turanchi  |           | what belongs to<br>the white man | ture     | the white<br>man's country |

7. *Abstract nouns formed from a verb or adjective with suffix.*—The suffixes are “-chi” and “-ta.”

-chi (m.)

This is never added to a verb alone. The prefix “ma-” is added as well. Some of these words have a concrete as well as an abstract meaning—

|            |                          |       |                                  |
|------------|--------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|
| Maaikachi  | labour and labourer      | aiki  | work (n. and v.)                 |
| Mafauchi   | slaughtering and butcher | fawa  | to slaughter                     |
| Marokachi  | begging and beggar       | roko  | to beg                           |
| Marowachi  | greediness               | rowa  | to be greedy and<br>covetousness |
| Matsorachi | cowardice                | tsoro | fear (n. and v.)                 |

-ta (f.)

|         |             |        |                  |
|---------|-------------|--------|------------------|
| Chiwuta | sickness    | chiwo  | sick (n. and v.) |
| Gajerta | shortness   | gajerc | short            |
| Kasamta | uncleanness | kasami | unclean          |
| Kuturta | leprosy     | kuturu | to be leprous    |
| Mugunta | evil        | mugu   | bad              |

8. Verbal nouns are formed with the suffix “-wa.”<sup>1</sup> Many verbs do not take this suffix, but the infinitive is used with the same sense. Verb forms ending in “-da,” for instance, do not admit of it.

A few nouns in this list have practically a concrete sense. Their gender is feminine—

|        |              |      |             |
|--------|--------------|------|-------------|
| Baiwa  | giving, gift | ba   | to give     |
| Chewa  | saying       | chc  | to say      |
| Dubawa | looking      | duba | to look at  |
| Fitowa | coming out   | fito | to come out |

<sup>1</sup> See also under Derived Verbs, class 8, and Present Participle.

|           |  |         |                    |
|-----------|--|---------|--------------------|
| Gamuwa    | <i>meeting</i>                         | gamu    | <i>to meet</i>     |
| Gaisua    | <i>saluting, salutation</i>            | gaishe  | <i>to salute</i>   |
| Kaiwa     | <i>bringing (a present to a chief)</i> | kai     | <i>to bring</i>    |
| Kamuwa    | <i>catching</i>                        | kamu    | <i>to catch</i>    |
| Karewa    | <i>ending</i>                          | kare    | <i>to finish</i>   |
| Koiyawa   | } <i>teaching</i>                      | koiya   | <i>to teach</i>    |
| Koiyasuwa |  |         |                    |
| Lalachewa | <i>idling, idleness</i>                | lalache | <i>to be idle</i>  |
| Mutuwa    | <i>dying, death</i>                    | mutu    | <i>to die</i>      |
| Rabuwa    | <i>separating</i>                      | rabo    | <i>to separate</i> |
| Rantsuwa  | <i>swearing, oath</i>                  | rantse  | <i>to swear</i>    |
| Tafia     | <i>travelling</i>                      | tafi    | <i>to go</i>       |
| Tareya    | <i>assembling</i>                      | tara    | <i>to assemble</i> |
| Tsirawa   | <i>saving</i>                          | tsira   | <i>to save</i>     |
| Tadowa    | <i>raising</i>                         | tada    | <i>to raise</i>    |

(For other examples, see under plural.)

It will be noticed that for translation into English the present participial construction is used.

The verb form in “-as” also admits of this suffix—

|          |                   |              |                    |
|----------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Tayesuwa | <i>helping</i>    | tayes (taya) | <i>to help</i>     |
| Fitasuwa | <i>coming out</i> | fitas (fita) | <i>to come out</i> |

9. A few nouns with a feminine meaning are derived from the masculine by some slight modification of the word, together with the addition of “a” as the terminal vowel.

|        |                        |          |                       |
|--------|------------------------|----------|-----------------------|
| Kane   | <i>younger brother</i> | kanua    | <i>younger sister</i> |
| Da     | <i>son</i>             | dia      | <i>daughter</i>       |
| Sariki | <i>king</i>            | saraunia | <i>king's wife</i>    |
| Yaro   | <i>boy</i>             | yarinia  | <i>girl</i>           |

(For other examples, see under gender.)

10. “-Ya” is suffixed to a few verbs to make concrete nouns—

|           |                       |     |                 |
|-----------|-----------------------|-----|-----------------|
| Kaya (m.) | <i>load</i>           | kai | <i>to bring</i> |
| Mashaya   | <i>drinking-place</i> | sha | <i>to drink</i> |

11. There are no real compound nouns in the Hausa language, but two nouns may be joined by the preposition “of”—

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Kada-n-gari | <i>lizard (lit., crocodile of the town)</i> |
| Ka-n-daki   | <i>upper room (lit., head of room)</i>      |
| Rua-n-sha   | <i>drinking-water</i>                       |

## 12. An adjective may be used as a noun.

Ko gida-n-sariki ko na talaka    *Whether the house of a chief or of a poor man*

13. *Noun phrases or noun sentences.*—These are mostly found in proverbs—

|                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Hauka-l-ba-ni magani-n-ta: | (For) the madness of "give me," |
| Ungo                       | the remedy is: "take it"        |
| Yao da gobe ke sa gini-    | "To-day and to-morrow" is like  |
| n-rijia da alura           | having a well dug with a needle |
| Magani-n-kada aji, kada    | The remedy for "let it not be   |
| ayi                        | heard" is "don't do it"         |

Also Ya tafo wurina do-n-gaishe-ni    *He came to salute me*

## PART II

## GENDER

Gender is grammatical. It is divided into masculine and feminine, and there is no neuter. The names of males are all masculine, and of females all feminine. The names of things and abstractions are either masculine or feminine according to their termination, the same applying to verbs when used in a noun form. A noun cannot be feminine except it ends in "a."

Nouns ending in "e," "i," "o," "u," and consonants are with the few exceptions of nouns representing the female sex, masculine.

Those ending in "a" are feminine, excepting those which represent the male sex and a few others.

The gender of each noun is given later under the plural.

Gender could be ignored as having a separate existence in a language if there were not other words, such as adjectives and pronouns, modified to agree with the noun according to the idea it represents. This is strictly so as regards plural, for, as will be seen in the chapter on the adjective, no distinction of gender is made in a noun when in the plural number. For instance—

|                  |                 |                |                   |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Mutum nagari     | <i>good man</i> | mache tagari   | <i>good woman</i> |
| Mutane nagargaru | <i>good men</i> | mata nagargaru | <i>good women</i> |

*Exceptions for Gender*

Although there is a gender to every noun, and nouns ending in "a" are assigned to the feminine gender, there is a great tendency to classify as masculine many nouns ending in "a" which are not the names of human beings or animals. This is especially common with those nouns which are used for prepositions, and is usually put down to carelessness in speaking. It is, however, a debatable point whether carelessness is possible to any appreciable extent with the mother tongue. It certainly exists with the written language, but the written form of a language always differs from the spoken form. The latter is the mother tongue, and it is learnt naturally much the same as the other functions of life, and accordingly varies but little from century to century unless subjected to some strong foreign influence.

It may therefore be taken that the apparent mistakes in gender are in reality idioms of the language which admit of perfect explanation, and their existence may be in accordance with a more influential rule of the language.

Seeing that it is by the adjuncts alone that the gender of a noun can be ascertained, the use of the masculine form for the feminine naturally requires some explanation, and it is in connection with the preposition "of" ("na," "n" for masculine, and "ta," "t," "l," "r," "t" for feminine) that the greatest uncertainties are found. This preposition as a copula, it may here be stated, plays a very important part in the structure of sentences.

The reason for the apparent exceptions that are found can only be ascribed to the more exigent rules of euphony. It is a common feature in some languages for words in a series to be made to agree with each other either in an initial syllable or in some other way. In Hausa itself this is found in the pronouns, in which "mini" is found for "mani," "mumu" for "mamu," etc.; and grammatical gender is probably largely assignable to the same reason.<sup>1</sup>

When, therefore, apparent mistakes in gender are made, they must be put down to a rule of euphony over-riding a rule of grammatical gender, the latter being but the offspring of the former.

<sup>1</sup> See Languages of West Africa—chapter on Gender

*Gender in Neighbouring Languages*

Hausa together with a few languages to the south and east of it are the only ones in West Africa which indicate masculine and feminine gender. In Hausa gender is further developed than in Angas and Bolanchi—to mention only two of these languages—and so far as is at present known the latter only distinguish it in the pronouns, and not in the adjective as in Hausa. To such an extent is the gender idea developed in Hausa that adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and prepositions are all under its influence.

A great many other languages in West Africa have a neuter gender, which distinguishes things from persons effected by means of the 3rd personal pronoun singular, but they do not in any way recognise masculine and feminine gender. Hausa with its neighbouring languages form, therefore, a little group by themselves as regards gender.

The sex of living things is distinguished in three ways:—

## 1. By different words for male and female—

|             |                      |                            |                              |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Uba         | <i>father</i>        | uwa                        | <i>mother</i>                |
| Uba-n-gi ji | <i>master</i>        | uwa-l-gida or<br>uworigida | <i>mistress of the house</i> |
| Miji        | <i>husband</i>       | mata                       | <i>wife</i>                  |
| Mutum       | <i>man</i>           | mache                      | <i>woman</i>                 |
| Namiji      | <i>male</i>          | tamata                     | <i>female</i>                |
| Ango        | <i>bridegroom</i>    | amaria                     | <i>bride</i>                 |
| Sarmayi     | <i>youth</i>         | budurua                    | <i>virgin</i>                |
| Wa          | <i>elder brother</i> | ya or iya                  | <i>elder sister</i>          |
| Bunsuru     | <i>he-goat</i>       | akwia                      | <i>she-goat</i>              |
| Rago        | <i>ram</i>           | tumkia                     | <i>ewe</i>                   |
| Toro †      | <i>male elephant</i> | giwa                       | <i>female elephant</i>       |
| Doki        | <i>horse</i>         | godia                      | <i>mare</i>                  |
| Rakumi      | <i>camel</i>         | tagua                      | <i>female camel</i>          |
| Zakara      | <i>-cock</i>         | kaza                       | <i>hen</i>                   |

(Other examples will be seen in the tables of plurals.)

## 2. By adding words representing male or female—

|             |                         |           |                           |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| Da-n-gari   | <i>townsman</i>         | ya-l-gari | <i>townswoman</i>         |
| Da-n-uwa    | <i>brother</i>          | ya-l-uwa  | <i>sister</i>             |
| Zakara-zabi | <i>male guinea-fowl</i> | zabua     | <i>female guinea-fowl</i> |

NOTE.—“Zabi” is apparently the plural form of the word “zabua.” As the common form of many animals, birds, etc.,



is the feminine form, it is to this that the word "male" ("na-miji") is added when it is necessary to indicate the sex. For birds "zakara," cock, is more generally used.

3. The feminine may be formed from the masculine by a different termination to the same root. The masculine may end in any vowel, but the characteristic termination of the feminine is "a" in the syllable "ia," "ania," "nia," or "unia," as—

|            |                        |                |                          |
|------------|------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Anabi      | <i>prophet</i>         | anabia         | <i>prophetess</i>        |
| Ba-fulache | <i>Fula man</i>        | ba-fulata      | <i>Fula woman</i>        |
| Ba-haushe  | <i>Hausa man</i>       | ba-hausa       | <i>Hausa woman</i>       |
| Ba-ture    | <i>white man</i>       | ba-turia       | <i>white woman</i>       |
| Bara       | <i>servant</i>         | barania        | <i>female servant</i>    |
| Barao      | <i>thief</i>           | baraunia       | <i>female thief</i>      |
| Bawa       | <i>slave</i>           | bauya or baiwa | <i>female slave</i>      |
| Da         | <i>son or free-</i>    | diya           | <i>daughter or free-</i> |
|            | <i>man</i>             |                | <i>woman</i>             |
| Gobro      | <i>bachelor</i>        | gobrua         | <i>spinster</i>          |
| Jariri     | <i>infant boy</i>      | jariria        | <i>infant girl</i>       |
| Kane       | <i>younger brother</i> | kanua          | <i>younger sister</i>    |
| Mayi       | <i>wizard</i>          | mayia          | <i>witch</i>             |
| Mafauchi   | <i>butcher</i>         | mafauchia      | <i>female butcher</i>    |

(See further under derived nouns, *supra*.)

|                      |                    |          |                      |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------|----------------------|
| Sariki               | <i>chief, king</i> | saraunia | <i>king's wife</i>   |
| Tsofo                | <i>old man</i>     | tsofua   | <i>old woman</i>     |
| Yaro                 | <i>boy</i>         | yarinia  | <i>girl</i>          |
| Alfadari             | <i>mule</i>        | alfadara | <i>female mule</i>   |
| Babe                 | <i>locust</i>      | babania  | <i>female locust</i> |
| Gado                 | <i>hog</i>         | gadonia  | <i>sow</i>           |
| Kare                 | <i>dog</i>         | kariya   | <i>bitch</i>         |
| Maraki }<br>Mareki } | <i>calf</i>        | maraka   | <i>female calf</i>   |
| Sa                   | <i>bull</i>        | sania    | <i>cow</i>           |
| Safi                 | <i>young horse</i> | safia    | <i>young mare</i>    |
| Safe                 | <i>morning</i>     | safia    | <i>morning</i>       |

To these may be added a number of abstract nouns, which, if formed with the termination "-n-chi" (K) are masculine, but if with the termination "n-taka" (S) are feminine—

Yaranoihi                      yarantaka                      youth

(See list of derived nouns in Part I.)

*Common Gender*

Some nouns relating to persons are of both genders. These include most nouns formed with the prefix "mai-," as—

Mai-aiki *worker*      Mai-karia *liar*      Mai-gaskia *speaker of the truth*

Others with the prefix "mai-" so exclusively represent the duties of men that they can only be of the masculine gender, as—

Mai-yaki *warrior*      mai-gona *farmer*      mai-doki *horseman*

It is to be noted that nouns with the prefix "mai-" are unchanged for gender, but those with the equivalent prefix "ma-" take a gender termination.

*List of Some Nouns ending in "a" which are Masculine*

(Names of human beings and animals of the male sex are not included).

|                   |                     |                     |                                    |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| Baba <sup>1</sup> | <i>greatness</i>    | Magana <sup>2</sup> | <i>speech</i>                      |
| Baka              | <i>bow</i>          | Nama                | <i>flesh</i>                       |
| Baya <sup>2</sup> | <i>back</i>         | Rana                | <i>day (m. and f.)<sup>3</sup></i> |
| Bisa <sup>2</sup> | <i>top</i>          | Rijia <sup>2</sup>  | <i>well</i>                        |
| Gaba <sup>2</sup> | <i>front</i>        | Rua                 | <i>water</i>                       |
| Gida              | <i>house</i>        | Suna                | <i>name</i>                        |
| Guga              | <i>bucket</i>       | Taberma             | <i>mat</i>                         |
| Igia              | <i>rope</i>         | Tsaka <sup>2</sup>  | <i>middle</i>                      |
| Kama <sup>2</sup> | <i>likeness</i>     | Tsofa               | <i>old age</i>                     |
| Kasa              | <i>ground</i>       | Wata                | <i>moon and month</i>              |
| Kaya              | <i>load</i>         | Yawa                | <i>crowd</i>                       |
| Kusa              | <i>nearness</i>     | Zuma                | <i>honey</i>                       |
| Kwaya             | <i>ear of grain</i> |                     |                                    |

(See further under plural forms.)

*PART III*

## NUMBER

There are two numbers in Hausa—the singular and plural. The plural is formed in a great variety of ways,

<sup>1</sup> Commonly used as an adjective.

<sup>2</sup> These nouns, though commonly masculine, are also met with in the feminine gender. When used as prepositions the masculine gender is commonly preferred.

<sup>3</sup> Rana = *sun* is fem.



and is extraordinarily rich in forms. Many nouns have as many as four plural forms. Most of these forms were originally, no doubt, of dialectic origin, but with the spread of the Hausa language as a *lingua franca* they have come to be used indiscriminately or so as to suit the harmony of the sentence. Some are more commonly used than others, and it is possible that there are slight distinctions of meaning, which are now quite disregarded, or, at all events, rarely paid any attention to. Among such possible distinctions are the definite as against the indefinite state, a collective sense as against one that preserves the distinctions of the individuals, or duality as against plurality.

In the present state of knowledge no etymology offers itself for any of these plural suffixes.

The plural in any language has probably originated in one of the following three methods<sup>1</sup> which, however, often become greatly corrupted, and when adopted into another language cease to be recognisable—

1. Reduplication.

2. Addition of an adjective meaning “many” or “all.”

3. Addition of the word “they” or “them.”

1. The first method is found in Hausa both in its purity and also modified. When modified the last syllable of the word is duplicated, and some change is also made in the final vowel, as—

|            |      |         |                   |
|------------|------|---------|-------------------|
| Iri-iri    | from | iri     | <i>kind, sort</i> |
| Hainyaiyai | „    | hainya  | <i>road</i>       |
| Dakunkuna  | „    | daki    | <i>hut, room</i>  |
| Hakukua    | „    | haki    | <i>grass</i>      |
| Takardodi  | „    | takarda | <i>paper</i>      |
| Kofofi     | „    | kofa    | <i>door</i>       |
| Yasosi     | „    | yasa    | <i>finger</i>     |

The reduplication of the last syllable takes the forms “(b)obi,” “(d)odi,” “(f)ofi,” “(g)ogi,” “(k)oki” “(s)osi,” “(t)oti” or “(t)oshi,” “(w)owi,” “(y)oyi,” etc.

All these terminations must in reality be regarded as one alone, for the last consonant in the word—that is, the one in the appended termination—is made to agree with the last consonant in the stem. This adaptation rather recalls what is not dissimilar in Wolof and Temne, the

<sup>1</sup> See the languages of West Africa—chapter on Plural.

article in those languages being made to agree consonantly with the radical consonant in the noun; and a similar harmonisation also exists in the Ba-Ntu languages.

2. As regards the second method, there is not a single one of the many terminations that can be connected with such words as "many" or "all."

3. As regards the third, the same may be said, though this method is found in Angas. On the other hand, in Bolanchi, a language similarly related to Hausa, the plural forms are as varied almost as they are in Hausa.

### *The Terminations*

The commonest plural termination is "ai," which is substituted for the last vowel of the noun, as "haske," "haskai," *light*.

Almost all, if not entirely all, nouns taking this termination can take also the termination "(-)o(-)i," the last consonant of the noun which stands before "o" standing also between "o" and "i," as "haske," "haskoki."

Further, these same nouns can probably all take the termination "una," the last vowel of the noun being changed to "u."

Other terminations are "ni" and "ki," usually added to nouns ending in "a," as—

|       |         |                                 |
|-------|---------|---------------------------------|
| wata  | watani  | <i>month</i>                    |
| rana  | ranaki  | <i>day</i>                      |
| kwana | kwanaki | <i>day of twenty-four hours</i> |

Nouns ending in "a" will often change "a" into "u," as—

|         |         |              |
|---------|---------|--------------|
| takarda | takardu | <i>paper</i> |
| fitila  | fitilu  | <i>lamp</i>  |

Some nouns add "aye" or "aje," changing the final vowel to "a" if necessary, as—

|      |        |              |
|------|--------|--------------|
| Suna | sunaye | <i>name</i>  |
| Gida | gidaje | <i>house</i> |
| Hanu | hanaye | <i>hand</i>  |
| Kifi | kifaye | <i>fish</i>  |

The foregoing are the commonest ways of forming the plural number, but, as can be seen in the following lists,

there are a great many other methods, and some nouns may have several different forms.

*Use of Plural Terminations.*

| TERMINATION TO UNBROKEN STEM | PERSONS  | ANIMALS  | INANIMATE THINGS AND ABSTRACT NOUNS |
|------------------------------|--|----------|-------------------------------------|
| ai                           | common   | common   | common                              |
| una                          | used   | common   | common                              |
| (-)o(-)i                     | used   | common   | common                              |
| ki                           | not used   | not used | common                              |
| wa                           | used   | not used | not used                            |
| u                            | used   | common   | rare                                |
| je                           | very rare  | rare     | used                                |
| ye                           | found more frequently than "je" but not so commonly used as other terminations |          |                                     |
| ni                           | used   | used     | used                                |

Other plural terminations occasionally met with are "a," and "i," and other variations.

*Accent*

ái the accent falls on ái—last syllable  
 úna ,, ú as a rule, but sometimes on the antepenultimate syllable

SIMPLE NOUNS—PLURAL

(The form in common use is marked with an asterisk.)

*Persons—Common Formation*

| MASC.    | FEM.     | AI               | -O-I        | UNA    | ENGLISH           |
|----------|----------|------------------|-------------|--------|-------------------|
| Aboki    |          | abokai           |             |        | <i>friend</i>     |
|          | abukia   | abokai           | abukiyoyi * |        | <i>friend</i>     |
| Alkali   |          | alkalai          |             |        | <i>judge</i>      |
| Almajiri | almajira | almajirai        |             |        | <i>disciple</i>   |
| Ango     |          |                  |             | anguna | <i>bridegroom</i> |
| Barao    | baraunia | barai and barayi |             |        | <i>thief</i>      |
| Dogari   |          | dogarai          |             |        | <i>soldier</i>    |
| Fasiki   | fasika   | fasikai          |             |        | <i>profligate</i> |

| MASC.                  | FEM.     | AI                             | -O-I                          | UNA      | ENGLISH -  |
|------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| Jagaba                 |          | jagabai                        |                               |          | <i>guide</i>   |
| Jariri                 |          | jarirai                        |                               |          | <i>baby</i>  |
| Galadima               |          | galadimai                      |                               |          | <i>minister</i>  |
| Hakimi                 |          | hakimai                        |                               |          | <i>governor,</i><br><i>ruler</i>                                 |
| Jika                   | jikata   |                                | jikoki                        |          | <i>grandchild</i>  |
| Kafira                 |          | kafirai <i>and</i><br>kafirawa |                               |          | <i>heathen</i>   |
| Kane                   | kanua    | kanai                          | kanoni <i>and</i><br>kanena   |          | <i>young</i><br><i>brother,</i><br><i>young</i><br><i>sister</i> |
|                        | kwuyanga | kuyangai                       |                               |          | <i>female slave.</i>   |
|                        | kwiyanga |                                |                               |          | In plural<br>applied to<br>both sexes                            |
| Kishia                 |          |                                | kishiyoyi                     |          | <i>rival wife</i>  |
| Kuruma                 |          | kurumai                        |                               |          | <i>deaf person</i>   |
| Munafiki               |          | munafikai                      |                               |          | <i>hypocrite</i>   |
| Musulmi                |          | musulmai                       |                               |          | <i>Moslem</i>  |
| Shagiri                |          | shagirai                       |                               |          | <i>beardless</i><br><i>person</i>                                |
| Shaida                 |          | shaidai                        | shaidodi                      | shaiduna | <i>witness</i>   |
|                        |          |                                | <i>and</i> shaidu             |          |  |
| Turdi                  |          |                                | turdodi <i>and</i><br>turdawa |          | <i>snake</i><br><i>charmer</i>                                   |
| Zābiya                 |          |                                | zābiyoyi                      |          | <i>musician</i>  |
| Zabiya                 |          |                                | zabiyoyi                      |          | <i>albino,</i><br><i>species</i><br><i>of date</i>               |
| Zarumi                 |          | zarumai                        |                               |          | <i>bodyguard,</i><br><i>brave man</i>                            |
| Zuma <i>or</i><br>zumu |          |                                |                               | zumuna   | <i>friend</i>  |

### Ki

Not used

### Wa

|        |         |         |          |                           |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|---------------------------|
| Anabi  |         |         | anabawa  | <i>prophet</i>            |
| Kafiri | kafirai |         | kafirawa | <i>heathen</i>            |
| Majusi |         |         | majusawa | <i>magician</i>           |
| Madugu |         |         | madugawa | <i>chief of a caravan</i> |
| Turdi  |         | turdodi | turdawa  | <i>snake charmer</i>      |
| Mafada |         |         | mafadawa | <i>counsellor</i>         |

See also *nouns with prefix "ba-"*

U

| MASC:                    | FEM.         | PLURALS                            | ENGLISH  |
|--------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|--|
| Aljan                    |              | aljanu                             | <i>demon</i>   |
| Balagaga                 |              | balagagu                           | <i>young man (adult)</i>                               |
| Dakara                   |              | dakaru                             | <i>bodyguard</i>                                       |
| Marare or<br>maraya (m.) | marania (f.) | marayoyi, marayu                   | <i>orphan</i>  |
| Hadaka                   |              | hadaku                             | <i>stranger who refuses<br/>to account for himself</i> |
|                          | saraunia     | sarauniyoyi sar-<br>auniyu         | <i>wife or sister of a<br/>king</i>                    |
| Shaida                   |              | shaidu, etc., see<br>previous list | <i>witness</i>   |

*Je and ye*

|                                  |          |   |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|---|
| Barao                            | baraunia | barayi and barai                                | <i>thief</i>  |
| Bebe                             |          | bebaye  | <i>dumb person</i>  |
| Boka                             |          | bokaye  | <i>wizard</i>   |
| Buzu                             |          | buzaye  | <i>a person half Hausa<br/>half Tawarek</i>   |
| Dengi, denga,<br>deggi           |          | dengoyi   | <i>family relations</i>   |
| Gabro (gobro) gabrua<br>(goburo) |          | g a b r a y e, a n d<br>gaguare                 | <i>bachelor and spinster,<br/>wifeless man, and so<br/>either widower or<br/>bachelor</i> |
| Gata                             |          | gataye  | <i>spy</i>  |
| Gimba                            |          | gimbaye   | <i>younger son of a<br/>chief, also a large<br/>white seed used as<br/>a bead</i>         |
|                                  | mata     | mataye, mataitai,<br>matataki                   | <i>wife</i>   |
| Rago                             | ragua    | ragaye,* ragaje<br>raguaye, raguna              | <i>idler</i>  |
|                                  | uwa      | uwaye and iyaye                                 | <i>mother and parents</i>   |
| Yaro                             | yarinia  | yaraye and yara*<br>yaraye, yara, and<br>yamata | <i>boy<br/>girl</i>   |

*Ni*

|       |         |                 |                               |
|-------|---------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| Baba  |         | babani          | <i>eunuch</i>                 |
| Kaka  |         | kakani * kakoka | <i>grandfather, ancestors</i> |
| Manzo |         | manzani         | <i>messenger</i>              |
| Wada  | wadania | wadani          | <i>dwarf</i>                  |

*Nouns that admit of a broken stem or change of word*

| MASC.                                   | FEM.          | PLURALS                        | ENGLISH            |
|---|---------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Baba                                    |               | mainya                         | great man          |
| Bardi                                   |               | baradine                       | horse soldier      |
| Bawa                                    |               | bayi,* bai, bawoyi             | slave              |
|   | bauya (S)     | bayi, bai                      | female slave       |
|   | baiwa (K)     | bayi, bai                      | female slave       |
| Da                                      | diya, dia, ya | yaya,* diya (S),<br>yayaya     | son, child, free   |
| Malam                                   |               | malamai, maluma                | mallam             |
| Miji, namiji                            |               | maza,* mazaje,<br>mazai        | husband, male      |
|   | mache         | mata                           | woman              |
| Mutum<br>(mutume)                       |               | mutane* (S) mut-<br>antani (K) | man, person        |
| Falke                                   |               | fatake                         | trader             |
| Kuturu                                  |               | kutare                         | leper              |
| Sariki                                  |               | sarakai, saraki,<br>sarakuna*  | king               |
|   | sarkania      | sarakai, saraki,<br>sarakuna*  | reigning queen     |
| Sarmayi<br>(samrai) or<br>samri (saure) |               | samari                         | youth under twenty |
| Uba                                     |               | ubane (K), ubanai<br>(S)       | father             |
| Wa                                      |               | yeyu                           | elder brother      |

*Plurals unclassified*

|                    |         |                           |            |
|--------------------|---------|---------------------------|------------|
| Bara               | barania | barua, barori,<br>barurua | servant    |
|                    | budurua | badurai                   | virgin     |
| Bako               | bakua   | baki, bakuna,<br>bakokuna | stranger   |
| Dodo               |         | dodonai                   | sprite     |
| Kafo               |         | kafi                      | blind man  |
| Manomi<br>(monomi) |         | monoma                    | cultivator |
| Makeri             |         | makira                    | blacksmith |
| Tsofo              |         | tsofafi, tsofi            | old man    |
| Talaka             |         | talakawa                  | poor       |

## LIVING THINGS

*Common formation*

| MASC.                         | FEM.                     | AI                             | -O-I                                  | UNA               | ENGLISH.                                   |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--|
|                               | Bika                     |                                | bikoki                                |                   | baboon                                     |
| Biri                          |                          | birai                          | birori, biruna,<br>birari, biraye     |                   | monkey                                     |
| Bunsuru                       |                          | bunsurai<br>and bun-<br>suraye |                                       |                   | he-goat                                    |
| Dabbo<br>(dabba)              |                          |                                | dabbobi<br>and dab-<br>boni<br>diloli |                   | live-stock                                 |
| Dukushi                       | dila<br>dukusa<br>dorina | dukusai<br>dorinai             |                                       |                   | jackal<br>young horse<br>hippo-<br>potamus |
|                               | fara<br>fara-n-dere      |                                | farori<br>farori - n -<br>dere        | faruna            | locust<br>black locust                     |
|                               | gafia<br>goda            |                                | gafiyoyi<br>gododi                    |                   | rat<br>small dark-<br>coloured<br>antelope |
| Gunzu<br>Jaki                 | jakania<br>and jaka      | jakai *                        |                                       | gunzuna<br>jakuna | pig<br>ass                                 |
| Kada<br>(kado)                |                          |                                | kadodi                                |                   | crocodile                                  |
| Kankeso                       | kenwa<br>kunama          | kankesai<br>kenwai<br>kunamai  |                                       | kenwuna           | cockroach<br>cat<br>scorpion               |
| Kurege<br>Kurtumi<br>Kusu     |                          | kuragai<br>kurtumai<br>kusai   |                                       |                   | jerboa<br>ox<br>mouse                      |
| Machi ji <sup>1</sup><br>Rago | machijia                 | machizai<br>ragai              | ragogi                                | raguna *          | snake<br>ram                               |
| Rakumi                        | shirua<br>tagua          | rakumai<br>taguai              | rakumomi<br>shiruyoyi<br>taguyoyi     | rakuma *          | camel<br>hawk<br>female<br>camel           |
| Takarikari<br>Taki            |                          | takarikarai                    | takoki                                |                   | bullock<br>locust of<br>sorts              |
| Zaka<br>Zomo or<br>zomu       | zakania                  | zomai                          | zakoki                                |                   | lion, lioness<br>hare                      |

<sup>1</sup> "j" is soft here, and "z" is almost "sh."

*Ki*

Not used with living things

*Wa*

Not used with living things, persons only

*U*

| MASC.              | FEM.             | PLURALS                       | ENGLISH  |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Alfadari           | alfadara<br>gada | alfadaru<br>gadu              | <i>mule</i><br><i>small reddish</i><br><i>antelope</i> |
|                    | hankaka          | hankaku <i>and</i><br>hankaki | <i>crow</i>  |
| Maraki<br>(mareki) | maraka           | maraku                        | <i>calf</i>  |
| Zakara             | tantabera        | tantaberu<br>zakaru           | <i>dove</i><br><i>cock</i>                             |

*Je and Ye*

|              |                            |  |   |
|--------------|----------------------------|--|---|
| Berdo        | bera                       | beraye   | <i>rat</i>  |
| Gadu (gyadu) | gadonia<br>gadania<br>giwa | berdaye<br>gadaye, gadoji,<br>gaduna<br>giwaye | <i>pigeon</i><br><i>pig</i><br><i>female elephant</i> |
| Kifi         |                            | kifaye   | <i>fish</i>   |
| Kudi (kuji)  | kuda<br>kura<br>mujia      | kudaje<br>kuraye<br>mujiye                     | <i>fly</i><br><i>hyaena</i><br><i>owl</i>             |
| Meke         | mekia                      | mekiye   | <i>a species of eagle</i>                             |
| Zunzu        |                            | zunzaye, zunzuaye                              | <i>bird</i>   |

*Ni*

|  |      |        |                  |
|--|------|--------|------------------|
|  | gara | garani | <i>white ant</i> |
|--|------|--------|------------------|

*Broken stem*

|      |                         |   |  |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|
|      | akuya (akwia)           | akuyai, akuyoyi,<br>awakai, awaki *                     | <i>she-goat</i>                                |
| Doki | bauna                   | bakani, baunaye<br>dawakai,* dawaki<br>dokuna (dowakai) | <i>buffalo</i><br><i>horse</i>                 |
| Kare | karia                   | karnai, karnuka   | <i>dog</i>                                     |
| Sa   | sania<br>kaza<br>tumkia | shanu<br>kaji<br>tumaki                                 | <i>bull, cow</i><br><i>hen</i><br><i>sheep</i> |



## Unclassified

| MASC.                                   | FEM.          | PLURALS                         | ENGLISH                 |
|---|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
|   | barewa        | bareyi                          | <i>antelope</i>         |
|   | bisa          | bisaisai, bisoshi,<br>bisashe * | <i>animal</i>           |
|   | gamraka       | gamraki                         | <i>crested crane</i>    |
|   | godia         | godi                            | <i>mare</i>             |
|   | hankaka       | hankaki, hankaku                | <i>crow</i>             |
|   | kagua         | kagunai                         | <i>crab</i>             |
| Kwado                                   |               | kwadia, kwaduna                 | <i>frog, toad</i>       |
| Kwaro                                   |               | kwari                           | <i>black moth</i>       |
|   | kurichia      | kuricheheki,<br>kurichiyoyi     | <i>dove</i>             |
| Kwikuyo or<br>kurkwiyo<br>(Zakara zabi) |               | kwikuye                         | <i>young of animals</i> |
| Tabri                                   | zabua (sabua) | sabi                            | <i>guinea fowl</i>      |
| Toro                                    |               | tabra                           | <i>castrated goat</i>   |
|   |               | torone                          | <i>bull</i>             |

## INANIMATE THINGS

## Common formation

|                               | AI        | -O-I      | UNA                      | ENGLISH  |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|--|
| Ado (m.)                      |           | adodi     |                          | <i>splendour</i>   |
| Albasa<br>(m. or f.)          | albasai   | albasosi  |                          | <i>onion</i>   |
| Akurike (m.)                  | akurikai  |           |                          | <i>fowl coop</i>   |
| Alama (f.)                    |           | alamomi   |                          | <i>sign</i>  |
| Alfuta<br>(m. or f.)          | alfutai   |           |                          | <i>head kerchief</i>                                     |
| Aljifa (m.)<br>or aljifi (m.) | aljifai * | aljifofi  | aljifuna<br>(aljifu)     | <i>pocket</i>  |
| Alura<br>(m. or f.)           | alurai *  | alurori   |                          | <i>needle</i>  |
| Awoza (f.)<br>or awaza        | awozai    |           |                          | <i>rib, side</i>   |
| Baki (m.)                     |           |           | (bakakuna)<br>and bakuna | <i>mouth</i>   |
| Bante (m.)                    |           |           | bantuna                  | <i>towel</i>   |
| Bata (f.)                     |           | batochi   |                          | <i>small box<br/>made of skin</i>                        |
| Bindiga (f.)                  |           | bindigogi |                          | <i>gun</i>   |
| Buka (f.)                     |           | bukogi    |                          | <i>tent</i>  |
| Bulala (f.)                   | bulalai   |           |                          | <i>whip of hippo-<br/>potamus hide</i>                   |
| Bunu (m.)                     | bunai     |           |                          | <i>grass for thatch,<br/>dark blue<br/>striped cloth</i> |

|                  | AI          | -O-I                   | UNA                        | ENGLISH                              |
|------------------|-------------|------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Chibia (f.)      |             | chibiyoyi              |                            | navel                                |
| China (f.)       |             | chiniyoyi              |                            | thigh                                |
| Daki (m.)        |             |                        | (dakunkuna)<br>and dakuna* | room, hut                            |
| Danga (m. or f.) |             | dangogi                |                            | garden, fence                        |
| Doiya (f.)       | doiyai      | doiyoyi                | doiyuna *                  | yam                                  |
| Duggo (m.)       |             | dugogi                 |                            | drop                                 |
| or digga (f.)    |             |                        |                            |                                      |
| Dukia (f.)       |             | dukoki and<br>dukiyoyi |                            | riches                               |
| Dundu (m.)       | dundai      | dundodi                | dunduna *                  | yam                                  |
| Dunia (f.)       |             | duniyoyi               |                            | world                                |
| Fada (f.)        |             | fadodi                 |                            | blow                                 |
| Fada (f.)        |             | fadodi                 |                            | chief's court                        |
| Fata (f.)        |             |                        | fatuna                     | skin                                 |
| Fikafike (m.)    | fikifikai   |                        |                            | wing                                 |
| Fukafuki (m.)    | fukafukai   |                        |                            | wing                                 |
| Filafile (m.)    | fulafulai   |                        |                            | paddle                               |
| or fnlafule      |             |                        |                            |                                      |
| Fitila (f.)      | fitilai     | fitiloli<br>(fitilu*)  |                            | lamp                                 |
| Fure (m.)        | furai       | furori<br>(furaye)     |                            | flower                               |
| Fuska (f.)       | (fuskaikai) | fuskoki                | fuskuna                    | face                                 |
| Gaba (m.)        |             | gabobi                 |                            | front, breast                        |
| Gamba (m.)       |             | gambobi                |                            | a grass, a kind<br>of hoe            |
| Gadó (m.)        | gadai       | gadodi                 | gaduna *                   | inheritance                          |
| Gádo (m.)        |             | gadodi and<br>(gadaje) |                            | bed                                  |
| Ganga (f.)       |             |                        | ganguna                    | drum                                 |
| Garike (m.)      | (garika)    |                        | garikuna,<br>gerkuna       | enclosure                            |
| or gerke (m.)    |             |                        |                            |                                      |
| Garwashi (m.)    |             | garwashoshi            |                            | burning char-<br>coal                |
| Gembo (m.)       |             |                        | gembuna                    | ulcer on body                        |
| Geza (m.)        |             |                        | gezuna                     | ear of corn,<br>mane                 |
| Gilmi (m.)       |             | gilmomi                |                            | cross                                |
| Gora (f.)        |             |                        | goruna                     | calabash, cup                        |
| Goriba (f.)      | goribai     | goribobi               |                            | a palm and the<br>mats made<br>of it |
| Guga (m.)        |             | gugogi                 | guguna                     | bucket                               |
| Gungume (m.)     | gungumai    |                        |                            | tree stump                           |
| Gwaza (m.)       |             | (gwazoyi)              | gwazuna                    | a kind of sweet<br>potato            |
| or Goza          |             |                        |                            |                                      |

|  | AI   | -O-I                                   | UNA                         | ENGLISH                            |
|--|--|--|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Haba (m.)                                |  | habobi                                 |                             | <i>chin</i>                        |
| Hako (m.)                                |  | hakoki                                 |                             | <i>pitfall</i>                     |
| Hanchi (m.)<br>or hanshi                 |  | hanchochi                              |                             | <i>nose</i>                        |
| Harufi (m.)<br>or harifi                 | harufai                                    |  |                             | <i>letter of<br/>alphabet</i>      |
| Hainya (f.)                              | hainyai <i>also</i><br>hainyaiyai          | hainyoyi *                             | hainyuna                    | <i>road</i>                        |
| Harshi<br>(halshi) (m.)                  |  |  | harshuna<br>and halshina    | <i>tongue</i>                      |
| Hatsi (m.)                               | hatsai <i>and</i><br>hatsaisai             | hatsoshi                               | hatsuna                     | <i>corn, wheat</i>                 |
| Hasko (m.)                               | haskai (S)<br><i>and</i> ask-<br>aikai (S) | haskoki (K)                            | haskuna (K)                 | <i>light</i>                       |
| Hauya (f.)                               |  | hauyoyi ( <i>and</i> hauyuna<br>hauyi) |                             | <i>hoe</i>                         |
| Hiska (m. or f.)                         |  | hiskoki                                |                             | <i>wind</i>                        |
| Igia (m.)                                |  | igiyoyi ( <i>and</i><br>igoyi)         |                             | <i>rope</i>                        |
| Iko (m.)                                 |  | ikoki                                  |                             | <i>power</i>                       |
| Iri (m.)                                 | irai                                       | irori (irare)<br><i>and</i> (iri-iri)  |                             | <i>kind, sort</i>                  |
| Iyaka (m. or f.)                         |  | iyakoki                                |                             | <i>boundary</i>                    |
| Jika (m.)                                |  | jikoki                                 | jikuna                      | <i>sack</i>                        |
| Jiki (m.)                                |  |  | jikuna                      | <i>body</i>                        |
| Jigo (m.)                                |  |  | jiguna                      | <i>post, beam</i>                  |
| Kango (m.)                               |  | kangogi<br>(kangaye)                   |                             | <i>ruin</i>                        |
| Karufa (f.)                              | karufai                                    |  |                             | <i>riding boots</i>                |
| Kataruka (f.)<br>or kaderko              |  |  | katarukuna                  | <i>bridge</i>                      |
| Kasua (f.)                               | kasuai *                                   | kasuwoyi                               |                             | <i>market</i>                      |
| Kilago (m.)                              | kilagai                                    |  |                             | <i>hide</i>                        |
| Kiriji (m.)                              | kirijai                                    |  |                             | <i>breast</i>                      |
| Kofa (f.)                                |  | kofofi <i>and</i><br>(kofanu)          |                             | <i>door</i>                        |
| Kogi (m.)                                | kogai                                      |  | koguna <i>and</i><br>kogina | <i>lake, river</i>                 |
| Kosfa<br>(kwosfa) (f.)                   |  | kosfofi                                |                             | <i>peel, dregs</i>                 |
| Kufita (m.)<br>or kufita                 | kufitai                                    |  |                             | <i>riding boots<br/>with spurs</i> |
| Kugiya (f.)<br>kogia <i>and</i><br>kogua |  | kugiyoyi                               |                             | <i>hook, clasp</i>                 |
| Kumbu (m.)                               | kumbai                                     |  | kumbuna                     | <i>scale, finger-<br/>nail</i>     |

|                               | AI        | -O-I   | UNA         | ENGLISH                      |
|-------------------------------|-----------|--|-------------|------------------------------|
| Kurada (m.)                   | kuradai   |  |             | <i>small round hatchet</i>   |
| Kurafu<br>(kurfu) (m.)        |           |  | kurfuna     | <i>hide whip</i>             |
| Launi (m.)                    | launai    | launoni <i>also</i><br>(launuka)<br><i>and</i> (launi-<br>launi) |             | <i>colour</i>                |
| Lebo (m.)                     |           |  | lebuna      | <i>lip</i>                   |
| Leferu (m.)                   | leferai   |  |             | <i>pad for donkey's back</i> |
| Lotu (m.)                     | lotai     | lotochi  | lotuna      | <i>season</i>                |
| Lufudi<br>(m.)                | lufudai   |  |             | <i>quilted coat</i>          |
| Madafa (f.)                   | madafai   |  |             | <i>cannon</i>                |
| Malafa (f.)                   | malafai   |  | malafuna    | <i>large straw hat</i>       |
| Marede (m.)                   | maredai   |  |             | <i>millstone</i>             |
| Molo (m.)                     |           |  | moluna      | <i>music (banjo)</i>         |
| Muddu (m.)                    |           |  | mudduna     | <i>a measure</i>             |
| Muria (m. or f.)              |           | muriyoyi   |             | <i>voice</i>                 |
| Raga (f.)                     |           | ragoyi   |             | <i>net bag</i>               |
| Rami (m.)                     |           |  | ramuna      | <i>hole</i>                  |
| Randa (f.)                    |           |  | randuna     | <i>large earthen pot</i>     |
| Rega (f.)                     |           |  | reguna      | <i>rags</i>                  |
| Riga (f.)                     |           | rigogi <i>also</i><br>(rigaigai) <i>and</i><br>(rigunoni)        | riguna *    | <i>clothes</i>               |
| Rumbu (m.)                    |           |  | rumbuna     | <i>storehouse</i>            |
| Saiyi (m.)                    |           | saiyoyi  |             | <i>shelter shed</i>          |
| Salga (f.)                    |           | salgagi  |             | <i>cesspit</i>               |
| Sanda (m. or f.)              |           |  | sanduna     | <i>stick</i>                 |
| Sanduki (m.)                  | sandukai  |  |             | <i>box</i>                   |
| Sanfo (m.)                    |           |  | sanfuna     | <i>basket</i>                |
| Sarauta (f.)                  | sarautai  | sárautochi   | sarautuna * | <i>kingdom</i>               |
| Sarika (m.)                   |           | sarikoki   |             | <i>chain</i>                 |
| Sefa (f.) <i>and</i><br>saifa |           | sefofi   |             | <i>spleen</i>                |
| Shekara (f.)                  | shekarai  | shekarori <i>and</i><br>(shekaru *)                              |             | <i>year</i>                  |
| Shantali<br>(santali)         | shantalai |  |             | <i>kettle</i>                |
| Sheria (f.)                   | sheriai   |  |             | <i>judgment</i>              |
| Shia (f.) <i>or</i><br>shiria |           | shiyoyi<br>shirori   |             | <i>quarter of a town</i>     |
| Surdi (m.)                    | sur(a)dai | surdodi  | surduna     | <i>saddle</i>                |
| Sufadu (m.)                   | sufadai   |  |             | <i>inner shoe</i>            |
| Tabo, (m.)                    |           |  | tabuna      | <i>dirt spot</i>             |

|                      | AI   | -O-I   | UNA       | ENGLISH               |
|----------------------|--|--|-----------|-----------------------|
| Takalmi (m.)         | takalmai   | tákalmomi,<br><i>also</i><br>(takalma)<br><i>and</i><br>(takaluma) |           | <i>shoe</i>           |
| Takarda (f.)         | takardai   | tákardodi,<br><i>also</i><br>takardu *                             | takarduna | <i>book, paper</i>    |
| Tanfasúa (f.)        | tanfasuai *  | (S) tánfasuwoyi  |           | <i>needle</i>         |
| Tafarnua (f.)        | tafarnai   |  |           | <i>garlic</i>         |
| Tago (m.)            |  |  | taguna    | <i>shirt</i>          |
| Tada (f.)            |  | tadodi   |           | <i>custom</i>         |
| Tafariki (m.)        |  | tafarkoki  |           | <i>way, method</i>    |
| Tagula (f.)          | tagulai  |  |           | <i>bracelet</i>       |
| Taiki (m.)           | (taiku)  |  | taikuna   | <i>bag, bundle</i>    |
| Tamraro (m.)         | t a m r a r a i,<br>(tauraro) <i>also</i> (tam-<br>r a i <i>and</i><br>(tamraru) |  |           | <i>star</i>           |
| Taru (m.)            |  |  | taruna    | <i>net</i>            |
| Tasunia (f.)         | tasunai  | tasuniyoyi   |           | <i>story</i>          |
| Taro (m.)            |  | tarori   |           | <i>crowd, heap</i>    |
| Tasa (f.)            |  | tasoshi  |           | <i>cup</i>            |
| Taska (f.)           |  | taskoki  |           | <i>store-room</i>     |
| Tasubi (m.)          | tasubai<br>(chasubi)   |  |           | <i>bead</i>           |
| Toka (f.)            |  |  | tokuna    | <i>ash</i>            |
| Tofo (m.)            |  |  | tofuna    | <i>leaf</i>           |
| Tsafi (m.)           |  |  | tsafuna   | <i>idol</i>           |
| Tufa (f.)            | (tufua)  | tufofi <i>and</i><br>(tufafi)                                      |           | <i>shirt, clothes</i> |
| Tudu (m.)            |  | tudodi   |           | <i>hill</i>           |
| Tumbi (m.)           |  |  | tumbuna   | <i>stomach</i>        |
| Turuba (f.)          |  | turobobi   |           | <i>path</i>           |
| Tuta                 |  | tutoshi  |           | <i>flag</i>           |
| Wakati (m.)          | wakatai  |  |           | <i>time</i>           |
| Wake (m.)            | (wakeke)   |  | wakuna    | <i>bean</i>           |
| Wando (m.)           |  |  | wanduna   | <i>trousers</i>       |
| Wuri (m.)            | wurai, <i>also</i><br>(wurare)   | wurori   | wuruna    | <i>place</i>          |
| Yatsa (yasa)<br>(f.) |  | yatsochi*<br>yasosi*<br>(yatsaitsai)                               | yatsuna   | <i>finger</i>         |
| Zargi (m.)           |  |  | zarguna   | <i>loop</i>           |
| Zobi (m.)            |  |  | zobuna    | <i>ring</i>           |
| Zunubi (m.)          | zunubai<br>(zunaba)  |  |           | <i>sin</i>            |

## U

This list includes words of foreign origin

| SINGULAR              | PLURALS   | ENGLISH   |                                 |
|-----------------------|---|-----------|---------------------------------|
| Albada (f.)           | albadu  | albadodi  | <i>strip of cloth</i>           |
| Alkaria (f.)          | alkariyu  |           | <i>village</i>                  |
| Alkeba (f.)           | alkebu  |           | <i>cloak</i>                    |
| Gargasa (f.)          | gargasu   |           | <i>large fish with red tail</i> |
| Hamata (f.)           | hamatu  |           | <i>arm-pit</i>                  |
| Kafada (f.)           | kafadu  | kafadodi  | <i>shoulder</i>                 |
| Kagara (kagarua) (f.) | kagaru  |           | <i>barricade</i>                |
| Kwarmi (m.)           | kwarmu  |           | <i>socket, joint</i>            |
| Labari (m.)           | labaru  |           | <i>news</i>                     |
| Mashi (m.)            | masu  |           | <i>spear</i>                    |
| Ragaita (f.)          | ragaitu   |           | <i>idleness</i>                 |
| Ragaya (f.)           | ragayu  |           | <i>supporting rope</i>          |
| Rai (m.)              | raiu, raiuka  |           | <i>life</i>                     |
| Refi (m.) (refo)      | refu, refuna  |           | <i>branch</i>                   |
| Shegifa (f.)          | shegifu   | shegifofi | <i>mud house</i>                |
| Silia (m. or f.)      | siliyu  | siliyoyi  | <i>silk</i>                     |
| Takarda (f.)          | takardu <i>and</i><br>other forms<br>( <i>see previous list</i> ) |           | <i>paper</i>                    |
| Tamraro (m.)          | tamraru <i>and</i><br>other forms<br>( <i>see previous list</i> ) |           | <i>star</i>                     |
| Zamani (m.)           | zamanu  |           | <i>time, season</i>             |

*Je and ye*

|                  |                    |                               |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Fili (m.)        | filaye             | <i>cultivated plain</i>       |
| Gainya (f.)      | gainyaye, gainye   | <i>leaf</i>                   |
| Gado (m.)        | gadaje, gadodi     | <i>bed</i>                    |
| Gauta (m. or f.) | gautaye            | <i>egg-plant</i>              |
| Gawoi (m.)       | gawaye             | <i>charcoal</i>               |
| Gida (m.)        | gidaje, gidadaje   | <i>house</i>                  |
| Gimba (f.)       | gimbaye            | <i>seed used as a bead</i>    |
| Guiwa (m.)       | guiwaye            | <i>knee</i>                   |
| Gujia (f.)       | gujeye, gujiyoyi   | <i>ground nut (also geda)</i> |
| Gwaza (f.)       | gwazoyi, gwazuna   | <i>sweet potato</i>           |
| Hanu (m.)        | hanaye, hanúa* (K) | <i>hand</i>                   |
| Kango (m.)       | kangaye, kangogi   | <i>ruin</i>                   |
| Kulu (m.)        | kulaye             | <i>whip mark</i>              |
| Kusurua (m.)     | kusuroyi           | <i>corner</i>                 |

|                        |                   |                    |
|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Rua (m.)               | ruaye, ruwaiwai   | <i>water</i>       |
| Suna (m.)              | sunaye,* sunanaki | <i>name</i>        |
| Soro (tsoro) (m.)      | soraye            | <i>porch, etc.</i> |
| Wuya (wiya) (m. or f.) | wiyayi            | <i>neck</i>        |
| Waje (woje) (m.)       | wosashe (wojaje)  | <i>side, place</i> |

*Ka, Ke, Ki*

|             |                             |                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Gona (f.)   | gonaki                      | <i>farm</i>                     |
| Kauye (m.)  | kauyuka                     | <i>hamlet</i>                   |
| Kwabri (m.) | kwabruka                    | { <i>dead tree</i>              |
| or Kauri    | kaurori                     |                                 |
| Kwana (m.)  | kwanaki,* kwanuka           | <i>day of twenty-four hours</i> |
| Rai (m.)    | raiuka, raiu                | <i>life</i>                     |
| Rana (f.)   | ranaki,* ranuka,<br>ranakai | <i>day</i>                      |
| Suna (m.)   | súnanaki, súnaye,<br>sunua  | <i>name</i>                     |
| Tsuma (f.)  | tsumoki                     | <i>rags</i>                     |
| Wake (m.)   | wakeke, wakuna              | <i>bean</i>                     |
| Wuka (f.)   | wukake                      | <i>knife</i>                    |
| Zaure (m.)  | zauruka                     | <i>porch</i>                    |

*Nouns that admit of a broken stem*

| SINGULAR               | BROKEN STEM FORM                | OTHER FORMS | ENGLISH                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|---|
| Aiki, (m.)             | ayuka, ayuyuka,<br>aikoki       | aikuna      | <i>work</i>                                   |
| Akoshi (m.)            | akusa                           |             | <i>wooden dish</i>                            |
| Aska (f.)              | asaki                           | askoki      | <i>razor</i>                                  |
| Bashi (m.)             | basusuka                        |             | <i>debt</i>                                   |
| Chiawa (f.)            | chiayi                          |             | <i>grass</i>                                  |
| Damchi (m.)            | damasa                          |             | <i>upper arm</i>                              |
| Duchi (m.)             | duatsu                          |             | <i>rock</i>                                   |
| Faifai (m.)            | fiyafai                         |             | <i>woven fan or dish-<br/>cover</i>           |
| Farichi (m.)           | faruta (S)                      |             | <i>finger-nail</i>                            |
| Galma (f.)             | galemi                          | galemuna    | { <i>a vegetable,</i><br><i>a sort of hoe</i> |
| Gulbi (m.)             | gulabo                          |             | <i>river, lake</i>                            |
| Gumki (m.)             | gumakai                         |             | <i>idol</i>                                   |
| Itachi (m.)<br>(itchi) | itatua (K)                      | itshuna (S) | <i>tree</i>                                   |
| Jijia (f.)             | jiwoyi                          |             | <i>vein</i>                                   |
| Jirigi (m.)            | jirage                          |             | <i>boat</i>                                   |
| Kabaki (m.)            | kabaka                          |             | <i>heap</i>                                   |
| Kai (m.)               | kawuna, kauna,<br>kawana, kanua |             | <i>head</i>                                   |

| SINGULAR     | BROKEN STEM FORM  | OTHER FORMS | ENGLISH               |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Kaimi (m.)   | kayami            |             | <i>spur</i>           |
| Karifi (m.)  | karafa            | karifuna    | <i>strength, iron</i> |
| Kasko (m.)   | kasaki            | kasku       | <i>pot, cup</i>       |
| Litafi (m.)  | litatafi          |             | <i>book</i>           |
| Mafuchi (m.) | mafelfechi        |             | <i>fan</i>            |
| Rijia (m.)   | rijoyi            |             | <i>well</i>           |
| Rotsi (m.)   | ratsa             |             | <i>blow</i>           |
| Takobi (m.)  | takuba            |             | <i>sword</i>          |
| Tukunia (f.) | tukuane (tukwani) |             | <i>pot</i>            |
| Wuri (m.)    | kurdi, kudi       |             | <i>cowry</i>          |
| Zuchia (f.)  | zukata            | zutochi     | <i>heart</i>          |

### *Plurals unclassified*

| SINGULAR                | PLURALS               | ENGLISH  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Abu (m.)                | abubua                | <i>thing</i>   |
| Algarib (m.)            | algaribi              | <i>red and black seeds of a certain plant</i>                    |
| Alhari (m.)             | alharini              | <i>silk</i>  |
| Birni (m.)              | birane and birnua     | <i>city</i>  |
| Bobawa (f.)             | bobaiyi               | <i>foreign speech (in a bad sense)</i>                           |
| Chiawa (m.)             | chiayi                | <i>grass</i>   |
| Gare (m.)               | garuruka              | <i>white tobe</i>  |
| Gari (m.)               | garurua, garuruka     | garigaru<br><i>town</i>  |
| Garkua (f.)             | gariki                | <i>shield</i>  |
| Gashi (m.)              | gasusuka              | <i>hair, wool</i>  |
| Gatari (m.)             | gátara, gátura        | gátarua<br><i>hatchet</i>  |
| Geme (m.)               | gema                  | <i>beard</i>   |
| Gera (gira) (f.)        | gerare, gerori        | <i>eyebrow</i>   |
| Giginia (f.)            | gigangani, gigin-yoyi | giginai<br><i>fan palm</i>                                       |
| Gora (f.)               | gororo                | { 1. <i>gourd used as water-bottle</i><br>2. <i>walking-cane</i> |
| Goro (m.)               | gworra                | <i>kola nut</i>  |
| Habaichi (m.)           | habaitai              | <i>abuse, secret signs</i>                                       |
| Habaki (m.)             | habaka                | <i>cloud of smoke</i>  |
| Haki (m.)               | hakukua               | <i>grass</i>   |
| Hakori (m.)             | hakora                | <i>tooth</i>   |
| Ido (m.)                | idanu (K)             | idanduna<br><i>eye</i>   |
| Ijia (f.)               | ido (S)               | <i>pupil of eye</i>  |
| Kafa (f.)               | kafafua, kafufu       | <i>foot</i>  |
| Kafo (m.)               | kafoni                | kafuna<br><i>horn</i>  |
| Kama (m. and f. (rare)) | kamanu                | <i>likeness</i>  |
| Kashi (m.)              | kasusua, kassa        | <i>bone</i>  |



| SINGULAR               | PLURALS                 | ENGLISH                            |
|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Kasa (m. and f.)       | kasashc,* kasaisai      | land, country                      |
| Kasko (m.)             | kasku                   | cup, pot                           |
| Karkara (f.)           |                         | plain                              |
| Kaya (m.)              | kayayeki                | load                               |
| Kaya (f.)              | kayayua                 | thorn                              |
| Kibia (f.)             | kibao                   | arrow                              |
| Kufai (m.)             | kufaifai                | ruins                              |
| Kune (m.)              | kunua                   | ear                                |
| Kurji (m.)             | kuraji                  | scab                               |
| Kushewa (kusheya) (f.) | kusheyi                 | grave                              |
| Kwoi (m.)              | kwoinyaye               | egg                                |
| Magana (m. and f.)     | maganganu               | word, language                     |
| Mágani (m.)            | maganguna,<br>magunguna | medicine                           |
| Rafi (m.)              | rafufuka                | stream                             |
| Rafonia (f.)           | rafoni                  | storeroom                          |
| Rufogo (m.)            | rufogi                  | storehouse                         |
| Tafia (f.)             | taffia                  | going, travel                      |
| Tulu (m.)              | tuluna                  | pot                                |
| Tumfafi (m.)           | tumfafia                | a tree producing<br>fibre for rope |
| Turumi (m.)            | turami                  | a mortar                           |
| Wada (f.)              | wadata                  | riches                             |
| Wata (m.)              | wátani,* wátanai        | month                              |
| Zane (m.)              | zanúwa, zanóa           | cloth                              |

VERBAL NOUNS—PLURAL

*Infinitives*

The infinitive when used as a noun forms the plural by reduplication with a change of form—

|        |                   |          |
|--------|-------------------|----------|
| Chi    | chiyé-chiyé       | eating   |
| Sha    | shayé-shayé       | drinking |
| Gudu   | gujé-gujé         | running  |
| Koyo   | koyé-koyé         | learning |
| Rubutu | rubuché-rubuché   | writing  |
| Karatu | karanché-karanché | reading  |

*Verbal Nouns in “-ia”*

This form takes the plural termination “-o-i.”

|       |          |            |
|-------|----------|------------|
| Tafia | tafiyoyi | travelling |
|-------|----------|------------|

Verbal nouns ending in the present participial termination “-wa” change “-wa” into “-woyi,” thus taking the common termination “-o-i,” with a variation in the semi-vowel—

| KANO    |           | SOKOTO   |            | ENGLISH              |
|---------|-----------|----------|------------|----------------------|
| Baiwa   | baiwoyi   | basuwa   | basuwoyi   | <i>giving</i>        |
| Bátawa  | bátawoyi  | bátaswa  | bátaswoyi  | <i>losing</i>        |
| Chiráwa | chirawoyi | chérsuwa | chérsuwoyi | <i>saving</i>        |
| Chidáwa | chidawoyi | chisuwa  | chisuwoyi  | <i>feeding</i>       |
| Fítaswa | fítaswoyi | fisuwa   | fisuwoyi   | <i>pulling out</i>   |
| Jefáwa  | jefuwoyi  | jefaswa  | jefaswoyi  | <i>throwing</i>      |
| Sáyowa  | sáyowoyi  | sáyoya   | sáyawoyi   | <i>buying</i>        |
| Sáyaswa | sáyaswoyi | sáysuwa  | sáysuwoyi  | <i>selling</i>       |
| Taráwa  | tarawoyi  | társuwa  | társuwoyi  | <i>assembling</i>    |
| Yásuwa  | yásuwoyi  | yázwa    | yázuwoyi   | <i>throwing away</i> |
| Zúbawa  | zúbuwoyi  | zúbsuwa  | zúbsuwoyi  | <i>pouring out</i>   |

### PLURALS OF COMPOUND NOUNS FORMED WITH PARTICLES

#### Ba

| MASC.                               | FEM.             | PLURAL  | ENGLISH OF MASC. SINGULAR                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| Ba-haushe                           | ba-hausa         | hausawa   | <i>Hausa</i>                                 |
| Ba-larabe                           | ba-laraba        | larabawa  | <i>Arab</i>                                  |
| Ba-fulache<br>(Ba-filache)          | ba-fulata        | fulani (fulbe is<br>the Fula plural)                          | <i>Fula</i>                                  |
| Ba-ture                             | baturia          | turawa  | <i>European</i>                              |
| Ba-tone                             | batonia, ba-tona | tonawa  | <i>Ashanti</i>                               |
| Ba-gobiri                           | ba-gobiria       | gobirawa  | <i>Gobir man</i> (Gobir<br>is part of Hausa) |
| Ba-sudani                           | ba-sudania       | sudanawa  | <i>Sudanese</i>                              |
| Ba-kano                             |                  | kanawa, kanowa  | <i>Kano man</i>                              |
| Ba-zabarimi                         |                  | zabarimawa<br>(Zabarimi is the<br>eastern part of<br>Songhay) | <i>Songhay man</i>                           |
| Ba-askare <sup>1</sup>              |                  | askarawa  | <i>soldier</i>                               |
| Ba-fadi <sup>1</sup> (or<br>bafada) |                  | fadawa  | <i>counsellor</i>                            |

#### Da

|              |              |                |                         |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| Da-n-kano    | ya-l-kano    | yaya-n-kano    | <i>Kano man</i>         |
| Da-n-alaro   | ya-l-alaro   | yaya-n-alaro   | <i>carrier</i>          |
| Da-n-alkaria | ya-l-alkaria | yaya-n-alkaria | <i>villager</i>         |
| Da-m-banza   | ya-l-banza   | yaya-n-banza   | <i>worthless person</i> |

<sup>1</sup> The association of “ba-” with any other than a place name is rare.

| MASC.      | FEM.        | PLURAL                             | ENGLISH OF<br>MASC. SINGULAR       |
|------------|-------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Da-m-birni | ya-l-birni  | yaya-n-birni                       | <i>citizen</i>                     |
| Da-n-daki  | ya-l-daki   | yaya-n-daki                        | <i>servant</i>                     |
| Da-n-doki  | ya-l-doki   | yaya-n-doki                        | <i>colt</i>                        |
| Da-n-gari  | ya-l-gari   | yaya-n-gari                        | <i>townsman</i>                    |
| Da-n-rago  | ya-l-tumkia | yaya-n-rago                        | <i>lamb</i>                        |
| Da-n-su    | ya-l-su     | yaya-n-su                          | <i>fisherman with<br/>hand net</i> |
| Da-n-uwa   |             | ya-n-uwa (short<br>for yaya-n-uwa) | <i>brother</i>                     |

*Mai*

All are common gender in singular, and masculine in plural, as are all nouns—

|             |                             |  |
|-------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Mai-aiki    | masu-aiki                   | <i>worker</i>                          |
| Mai-chi     | masu-chi                    | <i>eater or big eater</i>              |
| Mai-daki    | masu-daki                   | <i>house-owner</i>                     |
| Mai-doki    | masu-doki (masu-<br>dawaki) | <i>horseman</i>                        |
| Mai-gaskia  | masu-gaskia                 | <i>speaker of truth</i>                |
| Mai-gona    | masu-gona                   | <i>cultivator or owner of<br/>farm</i> |
| Mai-karia   | masu-karia                  | <i>liar</i>                            |
| Mai-mágani  | masu-mágani                 | <i>doctor</i>                          |
| Mai-yaki    | masu-yaki                   | <i>fighter</i>                         |
| Mai-hankali | masu-hankali                | <i>wise man</i>                        |

*Ma**Persons*

| MASC.   | FEM.        | PLURAL    | ENGLISH               |
|---|-------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Madumki   |             | madumkai  | <i>tailor</i>         |
| Makiyi  |             | makiya    | <i>personal enemy</i> |
| Mahaife   |             | mahaifa   | <i>parent</i>         |
| Mafada  |             | mafadawa  | <i>counsellor</i>     |
| Makafo  |             | makafi    | <i>blind man</i>      |
| Suffix -chi (m.), -chia (f). (The "ma-" is accented.) |             |           |                       |
| Máchiuchi   | máchiuchia  | máchiuta  | <i>sick person</i>    |
| Mafauchi  | mafauchia   | mafauta   | <i>butcher</i>        |
| Mahaukachi  | mahaukachia | mahaukata | <i>madman</i>         |
| Makofchi<br>(makubchi)                                | makofchia   | makofta   | <i>neighbour</i>      |
| Makaranchi  | makaranchia | makaranta | <i>schoolboy</i>      |
| Marubuchi   | marubuchia  | marubuta  | <i>writer</i>         |
| Masallachi  | masallachia | masallata | <i>praying person</i> |
| Masunchi  | masunchia   | masunta   | <i>fisher</i>         |

*Things*

| MASC. and FEM.  | PLURAL            | ENGLISH        |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Madafa (f.)     | madafai           | cannon         |
| Madaffa (f.)    | madaffai          | kitchen        |
| Machidi (m.)    | machidai          | feeding-place  |
| Mafari (m.)     | mafarai           | beginning      |
| Mafuti (m.)     | mafutai           | resting-place  |
| Magáni (m.)     | maganái           | outlook        |
| Makari (m.)     | makarai           | end            |
| Mahayi (m.)     | mahayai, mahayoyi | step           |
| Mariki          | marika            | handle         |
| Masallachi (m.) | masalatai         | mosque         |
| Mashayi (m.)    | mashayai          | drinking-place |
| Mazamni (m.)    | mazamnai          | seat           |

Suffix -ta (singular), -tai (plural)

|                |            |                      |
|----------------|------------|----------------------|
| Máfauta (f.)   | máfautai   | slaughter-place      |
| Machiuta (f.)  | machiutai  | place of sickness    |
| Mahaukata (f.) | mahaukatai | place for mad people |
| Makaranta (f.) | makarantai | school               |
| Masunta (f.)   | masuntai   | fishing-place        |

*No prefix*

Suffix -ta (singular), -tochi (plural)

(ch is in lieu of "t" before "i")

|              |            |           |
|--------------|------------|-----------|
| Chiuta (f.)  | chiutochi  | sickness  |
| Fauta (f.)   | fautochi   | slaughter |
| Haukata (f.) | haukatochi | madness   |
| Karanta (f.) | karantochi | schooling |
| Sallata (f.) | sallatochi | worship   |
| Sunta (f.)   | suntochi   | fishery   |

The foregoing are examples of three meanings derived from the same stem—the person, the place, the action, the latter, however, being without a prefix. The plurals of abstract nouns are rarely used in practice.

## PLURALS OF OTHER ABSTRACT NOUNS WITHOUT PREFIX

*Suffix -nchi (m.), -ntaka (f.)*

The first is of Kano origin and the other of Sokoto origin. Abstract nouns with these terminations can from their nature be but rarely put in the plural—

Sarkanchi sarkantochi sarkantaka sarkantakoki kingship

A list of some of these nouns is given under the derivation of the noun.

It is to be noted that both forms take the plural termination “-o-i” adapted with the proper consonant.

### PLURALS OF COMPOUND NOUNS

#### *Prefix Abi-n-*

Compound nouns formed with this prefix do not usually take a plural. The plural of “abi-n-tsoro” could be rendered “abubua-n-tsoro”—that is, *things to fear*; but this rather directs the emphasis to the word “thing,” and the compound practically becomes dissolved.

The words “abinchi,” *food*, and “abinsha,” *drink*, are in such common use, however, that they have ceased to be regarded as having component parts, and so the plurals are formed on lines as if they were simple nouns, as—

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| Abinchi | abinchai, abintochi |
| Abinsha | abinshai            |

#### *Prefix Wuri-n-*

If nouns compounded with this word are put in the plural, “wuri-” takes its ordinary plural form, and, as with “abi-n-,” the compound noun becomes dissolved.

|              |                |                       |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Wuri-n-kwana | wurare-n-kwana | <i>sleeping-place</i> |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------------|

### OTHER COMPOUND NOUNS

Other compound nouns which do not take a plural to the first part of the word are rare—

|                      |           |                     |
|----------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| Kandaki (kai-n-daki) | kandakuna | <i>upper storey</i> |
|----------------------|-----------|---------------------|

### NOUNS WITHOUT PLURAL

There are a great many nouns which do not admit of a plural.

1. Nouns denoting mass cannot form a plural—

|              |               |               |              |               |              |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| Zinaria (f.) | <i>gold</i>   | Hazi          | <i>corn</i>  | Kura (f.)     | <i>dust</i>  |
| Azurufa (f.) | <i>silver</i> | Alkama (f.)   | <i>wheat</i> | Zumua (m.) or |              |
|              |               | Shinkafa (f.) | <i>rice</i>  | Rua-n-zumua   | <i>honey</i> |

## 2. Parts of the body—

|           |              |           |              |           |             |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| Jini (m.) | <i>blood</i> | Nama (m.) | <i>flesh</i> | Nono (m.) | <i>milk</i> |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|-------------|

## 3. Abstract nouns expressing faculties of the mind—

|            |                     |             |             |
|------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Yirda (f.) | <i>belief, etc.</i> | Murna (f.)  | <i>joy</i>  |
| Tsoro (m.) | <i>fear</i>         | Tamaha (m.) | <i>hope</i> |

## 4. Most abstract nouns cannot form a plural (and others only rarely)—

|              |                |           |               |             |                 |
|--------------|----------------|-----------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Mugunta (f.) | <i>badness</i> | Keau (m.) | <i>beauty</i> | Tsarki (m.) | <i>holiness</i> |
| Bauta (f.)   | <i>slavery</i> | Gaskia    | <i>truth</i>  |             |                 |

## 5. Nouns of position—

|                  |            |                   |               |
|------------------|------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Bisa (m. and f.) | <i>top</i> | Tsaka (m. and f.) | <i>middle</i> |
|------------------|------------|-------------------|---------------|

## 6. Designations of time—

|                         |                |              |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| Safe (m.) or safia (f.) | <i>morning</i> | Mareche (m.) | <i>evening</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|

## 7. Sundry—

|           |              |           |                 |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Kama (f.) | <i>cubit</i> | Zaka (f.) | <i>land tax</i> |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|-----------------|

## NOUNS WITHOUT A SINGULAR

Nouns without a singular are rare. The following are some of which no singular form can be traced—

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Dasashi (K), dasori (S)  | <i>gums of the mouth</i>     |
| Kekarai                  | <i>swelling in the hands</i> |
| Tuguai, tuguaye, taguaye | <i>twins</i>                 |

## USE OF SINGULAR FOR PLURAL

There is a strong tendency among the Hausa people to use the singular for the plural. In this tendency they are only following the common practice of other West African languages, in which the plural suffix is an independent word or particle, and is movable to the last word in a sequence of words, it being incorrect, and indeed impossible, to affix it to more than one word. In such languages the phrase "ten big things" becomes "thing big ten," or "thing bigs" for "big things." The numeral or some

similar word takes the place of the plural suffix, but cannot accompany it.

In the chapter on the adjective it will, however, be seen that Hausa does not fall in with these languages beyond having the preference for the singular form over the plural form, and in this respect it lies closer to European languages in its construction.

It is only in very correct Hausa, indeed it might be called pedantic, for the noun to be put into the plural form when there are qualifying words. When the noun stands alone it must of course be put in the plural number to complete the sense. Otherwise it is correct to use the singular.

### *Examples*

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Mutum biu sun zo                      | <i>Two men have come</i>   |
| Sarakuna sun zo                       | <i>The chiefs have come</i>  |
| Hainya-r-nan da duchi (or da duatsu). | <i>This road is rocky</i>  |
| Ya yi shekara biu ban ganka ba        | <i>It is two years since I saw you</i>                             |
| Kwana-mu goma muna tafia              | <i>We have been ten days travelling</i>                            |
| Ku dauki kaya                         | <i>Take up your loads</i>  |
| Andamre kaya duka ?                   | <i>Are all the loads tied up ?</i>                                 |
| Muka beri kaya-mu a wani gari         | <i>We have left our loads in another town (i.e., all together)</i> |

*(If the plural were used here, it would refer to each one's individual load separately.)*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Shi ne ya fadi ku mutane dan Adam                                       | <i>He it is he tells (you) you sons of Adam</i>                      |
| Shekaru - n - ka nawa ? Saura wata uku cn yi (or chika) shekara ashirin | <i>How old are you ? In three months I shall be twenty years old</i> |
| Saura kwana uku ku gamma aikinku  | <i>In three days more you will have finished your work</i>           |
| Mugunta da suka yi ta komo bisa kainsu                                  | <i>The evil that they did came back upon their own heads</i>         |

### PLURAL FORMS WITH A SINGULAR MEANING

There are few plural forms of nouns in Hausa which are used with a singular meaning in a slightly different sense, as—

1.

Mache      woman                      mata      women



but "mata" is commonly used as a term of respect in addressing any woman—

Sanu, mata?      *How do you do, madam?*

"Mache" is never used in such a way.

"Mata" also means *wife*, as which it takes a plural, "mataye," etc.—

Enna matanka?      *Where is your wife?*

certainly not "Where are your women?" But—

Mata nan suna noma; bayi ne      *These women are ploughing; they are slaves*

## 2.

Wuri      *cowry shell*      kurdi      *cowries*

but "kurdi" is commonly used meaning *money* or *price*.

## PART IV

## CASE

There is no inflection of the noun for case.

As in English, the position of the substantive with regard to the verb decides whether it is nominative or accusative; and what would be the genitive, dative, ablative, or locative cases are indicated by prepositions.

It is under prepositions, therefore, that this subject is in reality treated.

The following, however, is a brief outline of the declension of the noun with appropriate prepositions:—

## SINGULAR

|             |                      |                            |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | mutum                | <i>man</i>                 |
| <i>Voc.</i> | kai mutum            | <i>you man</i>             |
|             | ke yarinia           | <i>you girl</i>            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | mutum                | <i>man</i>                 |
| <i>Gen.</i> | -n-mutum (=na mutum) | <i>of a (or the) man</i>   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ga mutum             | <i>to a (or the) man</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | da mutum             | <i>with a (or the) man</i> |
| <i>Loc.</i> | a hainya             | <i>on the road</i>         |

## PLURAL

|             |            |                |
|-------------|------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | mutane     | <i>men</i>     |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ku mutane  | <i>you men</i> |
|             | kai mutane | <i>you men</i> |



|             |                       |                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Acc.</i> | mutane                | <i>men</i>                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | -n-mutane (na mutane) | <i>of men</i>                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ga mutane             | <i>to the men</i>               |
| <i>Abl.</i> | da mutane             | <i>with men or with the men</i> |
| <i>Loc.</i> |                       |                                 |

## SYNTAX OF THE CASES

The nominative and accusative are used in the same position in a sentence as they are in English.

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Mutum ya chi nama   | <i>The man ate the meat</i> |
| Mutane sun chi nama | <i>The men ate the meat</i> |

*Vocative*

In the vocative the pronoun "you" precedes an unqualified noun, and is distinguished for gender.

In the plural the singular pronoun masculine may be used as well as the plural pronoun. This usage points to the supposition that the pronoun has degenerated into an interjection pure and simple—

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Kai yaro! ka zo!       | <i>You boy! come!</i>                        |
| Ke yarinia! ki zo!     | <i>You girl! come!</i>                       |
| Miji na! Mi ya sameka? | <i>My husband! What has happened to you?</i> |

In formal address the Arabic interjection "ya" may precede the pronoun or noun, as—

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| Ya sidi!         | <i>O sir!</i>            |
| Ya ku Israilawa! | <i>O you Israelites!</i> |

*Genitive*<sup>1</sup>

This case is formed by two substantives connected by the preposition "na," *of*, the possessed object standing first, the possessor last, or it may be formed by two nouns in apposition in the same order but with no copulative. The latter construction is perhaps less common on the whole.

"Na" in the masculine becomes "ta" in the feminine. These long forms are not very frequently met with,

<sup>1</sup> See particularly under Preposition "na."

however, but are shortened and vary for euphony as follows:—

Masc. "Na" = "n," "m," "d," or omitted if the last vowel of the noun preceding is "a."

Fem. "Ta" = "t," "r," "l," according to dialect as well as euphony. In Kano "r" and "t" are preferred, but in Sokoto "l." In Kano "n" is also used. Frequently the "r" is scarcely heard, and so it seems as if there were two nouns in juxtaposition, as is common in other West African languages — e.g., Yoruba, Igara, Nupe, etc. Also the masculine form "n" is commonly heard where the feminine would be technically accurate.

Plural. In the plural "n" alone is used, in accordance with the rule of the language that gender is not recognised in the plural number.

### Examples

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Yaro-n-sariki   | <i>the boy of the king</i>                              |
| Yara-n-saraki   | <i>the boys of the kings</i>                            |
| Da-n-uwana      | <i>The son of my mother—i.e., brother, cousin, etc.</i> |
| Ya-t-malam      | } <i>the priest's daughter</i>                          |
| Ya-r-malam      |   |
| Ya-l-malam      |   |
| Ya-n-malam      |   |
| Yaya-n-malam    | <i>the priest's daughters</i>                           |
| Yaya-n-malamai  | <i>the daughters of the priests</i>                     |
| Akwia-r-bako    | <i>the stranger's she-goat</i>                          |
| Awaki-n-bako    | <i>the stranger's she-goats</i>                         |
| Mutume-n-sariki | <i>the chief's man</i>                                  |

It is to be noted that the accent on the word representing the object possessed is changed, as—

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Yarínia          | <i>the girl</i>         |
| Yariniá-t-sariki | <i>the chief's girl</i> |

Another way of expressing the genitive is the use of a possessive pronoun.

|                |                           |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| Sariki matansa | <i>the chief his wife</i> |
|----------------|---------------------------|

### Example of Nouns in apposition

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Bako gari ba ka zo dadai ba | <i>A strange city to which you have never before come</i> |
|-----------------------------|---|

*Dative*

To express the dative the usual prepositions are "ga" and "ma."

Ya fadi ga bature or Ya fadi ma bature      *He said to the white man*  
 Ya bayes rua ga dokinsa                      *He gave water to his horse*

If a place name is mentioned the preposition is omitted—

Ya tafia Kano      *He went to Kano*

Otherwise it is inserted—

Sun tafi ga wani gari      *They went to another town*

After the verb "to give," the preposition is often omitted and the position of accusative and dative interchangeable—

Ba yaro keauta      *Give the boy a present*  
 Ba da uwalsa      *Give the child to its mother*

If for a simple noun in the dative case there is substituted a series of nouns in apposition, the preposition may still be dropped—

Shi ne ya fadi ku mutane dan Adam      *He it is who speaks to you,  
 you sons of Adam*

*Ablative*

It is not always possible to express this case directly in Hausa. In other West African languages the difficulty is even greater, and from the English point of view a circumlocution has to be made use of, as: "He took-it-out his hand" for "He took it from him"; "He got up at Kano he went Sokoto" for "He went from Kano to Sokoto"—

Na fito daga Bornu      *I come from Bornu*  
 Yaushe ka samu wotsika gare-sa ?      *When did you receive the letter  
 from him? lit., towards  
 him (the idea of motion  
 being represented by  
 "samu")*

Compare the contrary idea—

Yaushe ka aike wotsika gare-sa ?      *When did you send the letter  
 to him?*  
 Anema dayawa gare-sa      *There will be required much  
 from (lit., towards) him*

*Locative case*

The equivalent of the locative is effected by many prepositions of place, but especially by “a”—

Doki shina tsaye a hainya

Baya-n-gida

A baya-n-gida

*The horse stands in the road*

*behind the house*

*behind the house (but more emphatically in one locality behind the house)*

## CHAPTER III

### ADJECTIVE

APART from numeral adjectives, which will be treated separately, the adjective is of two kinds — simple and compound.

Simple adjectives show gender and number, but not case.

Compound adjectives do so also, except those compounded with “da,” which show neither.

#### GENDER

The feminine gender is formed from the masculine of simple adjectives by the addition of “a,” “ia” (“iya”), or “ua” (“uwa”) to the stem, the final vowel of the masculine form, whatever it may be, being dropped.

In compound adjectives either the same rule may be followed or there may be no change, but in the single case of “nagari,” *good*, there is an initial change.

#### PLURAL

In the plural there is no indication of gender at all. The plural is formed in the same way as with nouns, but there is a preference for the vowel “u” as a termination.

#### DERIVATION

Simple adjectives are those which cannot be derived from other parts of speech.

Compound adjectives are formed from nouns with the prefixes "na-," *of*, "mai-" = *owner*, "mai-ras" or "ma-ras," the contrary of "mai-," "da-" = *with*, and "babu-," *without*.

In addition to the foregoing the present and past participles are treated as adjectives. The present participle is formed by "mai-" or "ma-" being prefixed to the verb stem. The past participle is formed by an amplification of the stem.

## SIMPLE ADJECTIVES

| MASC.   | FEM.                       | PLURAL  | ENGLISH                      |
|---|----------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| Algashi   | álgasha                    | álgasái, algasu                                     | <i>green</i>                 |
| Baki  | baka                       | bábaku (S), bábaki (K)                              | <i>black</i>                 |
| Baba  | baba                       | babuna, mainya                                      | <i>big</i>                   |
| ("baba" is in reality a noun meaning <i>greatness</i> ) |                            |   |                              |
| Banza   | banza                      | banzaizai (S), banzayi (S)                          | <i>worthless</i>             |
| Dainye  | dainya                     | dainyu, dainyoyi                                    | <i>fresh</i>                 |
| Dogo  | dogua                      | dogaye (S), doguna (K)                              | <i>tall</i>                  |
| Fari  | fara                       | farfaru or farfaru (S), farfare (K), faraye, farare | <i>white</i>                 |
| Gajere  | gajera (S),<br>gajeria (K) | gajeru, gajerai                                     | <i>short</i>                 |
| Gurgu   | gurgua                     | guragu  | <i>lame</i>                  |
| Ja  | ja                         | jajaye  | <i>red</i>                   |
| Kárami  | kárama,<br>karamia         | karamu, káramai                                     | <i>small</i>                 |
| Kankane   | kankanwa                   | kanana, kankana (K)                                 | <i>small</i>                 |
| Kadan   | kadan                      | kadan   | <i>little, few</i>           |
| Kakabra   | kakabra                    | kabrara   | <i>fat</i>                   |
| Kekashe   | kekasa,<br>kekashashia     | kekasu  | <i>dry, dried</i>            |
| Kore  | koria                      | kworre  | <i>green</i>                 |
| Mugu  | mugunia                    | miyagu  | <i>tad</i>                   |
| Rama,<br>ramame   | ramamia                    |   | <i>thin</i>                  |
| Rawaya  | rawaya                     | rawayu (S), rawayai (S)                             | <i>yellow</i>                |
| Sabo  | sabua                      | sababi, sabui                                       | <i>new</i>                   |
| Shudi   | shudia                     | shudodi, shuduna                                    | <i>light blue</i>            |
| Tsofa   | tsofua                     | tsofafi, tsofi                                      | <i>old</i>                   |
| Wofi  | wofi                       | wofuna (K)  | <i>empty</i>                 |
| Yofi  | yofi                       | yofaifai (Zanf)                                     | <i>empty</i>                 |
| Yáraní  | yárana                     | yáranai, yáranoni (both S)<br>dayawa                | <i>yellow</i><br><i>many</i> |
| Duka  | duka                       | duka  | <i>every, all</i>            |

## COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

1. Formed with "na," *of*, with a noun. These are very few, but *see also* ordinal numerals, which are formed also by this method—

|           |           |            |                |
|-----------|-----------|------------|----------------|
| Ná-gari   | tá-gari   | ná-gargaru | <i>good</i>    |
| Na-kwarai | ta-kwarai | ?          | <i>correct</i> |

2. Formed with "mai" = *owner of*, and a noun. The construction is obvious, and an unlimited number of adjectives can be made in this way—

| MASC. and FEM. | PLURAL       | ENGLISH        | FROM                           |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Mai-anfani     | masu-anfani  | <i>useful</i>  | anfani = <i>use</i>            |
| Mai-araha      | masu-araha   | <i>cheap</i>   | araha = <i>cheapness</i>       |
| Mai-fadi       | masu-fadi    | <i>broad</i>   | fadi = <i>breadth</i>          |
| Mai-gaskia     | masu-gaskia  | <i>true</i>    | gaskia = <i>truth</i>          |
| Mai-hankali    | masu-hankali | <i>prudent</i> | hankali = <i>care, etc.</i>    |
| Mai-karifi     | masu-karifi  | <i>strong</i>  | karifi = <i>iron, strength</i> |
| Mai-keao       | masu-keao    | <i>fine</i>    | keao = <i>beauty</i>           |
| Mai-rai        | masu-rai     | <i>living</i>  | rai = <i>life</i>              |
| Mai-tsada      | masu-tsada   | <i>dear</i>    | tsada = <i>dearness</i>        |
| Mai-zuchia     | masu-zuchia  | <i>brave</i>   | zuchia = <i>heart</i>          |
| Mai-zurufi     | masu-zurufi  | <i>deep</i>    | zurufi = <i>depth</i>          |

3. The contrary of the foregoing class of compound adjectives is formed by suffixing the particle "-rasa" to "mai," and an equally large number of adjectives can be formed in this way.

For "mai-rasa" "maras"<sup>1</sup> is often used, the meaning being the same, but "mairasa" is not changed for gender, whereas "maras" becomes "marashia" in the feminine—

| MASC.                            | FEM.             | PLURAL             | ENGLISH              |
|----------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Mai-rasa-karifi                  | mai-rasa-karifi  | masu - rasa-karifi | <i>powerless</i>     |
| Maras-karifi or marashi-n-karifi | marashia-karifi  | marasa-karifi      | <i>powerless</i>     |
| Maras-hankali                    | marashia-hankali | marasa-hankali     | <i>foolish</i>       |
| Maras-kachia                     |                  | marasa-kachia      | <i>uncircumcised</i> |

4. "Da," *with*, compounded with nouns, makes adjectives. These adjectives can only be used predicatively and never attributively. They are without any idea of gender and

<sup>1</sup> Often pronounced "mara."

number. An unlimited number of adjectives can be made in this way—

|           |                              |            |                |
|-----------|------------------------------|------------|----------------|
| Da-keao   | <i>fine</i>                  | Da-hankali | <i>careful</i> |
| Da-anfani | <i>useful</i>                | Da-nauyi   | <i>heavy</i>   |
| Da-araha  | <i>cheap</i>                 | Da-rai     | <i>alive</i>   |
| Da-bam    | <i>different</i>             | Da-yungwa  | <i>hungry</i>  |
|           | Da-yawa (shortened to diawa) |            | <i>many</i>    |

The opposite of these meanings is effected by the use of “babu,” *without* (lit., “ba,” *not*; “abu,” *a thing*)—

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| Babu-keao   | <i>no good</i> |
| Babu-anfani | <i>useless</i> |

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The present participle (so-called) is formed by the prefixes “mai-” and “ma-,” the former being of Sokoto origin, the latter of Kano.<sup>1</sup> With the former the verb stem remains unchanged, but with the latter the stem is changed for gender and number—

| MASC.      | FEM.        | PLURAL             | ENGLISH          |
|------------|-------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Mai-aiki   | mai-aiki    | masu-aiki          | <i>working</i>   |
| Ma-aikachi | ma-aikachia | ma-aikata          | ”                |
| Mai-ázumi  | mai-ázumi   | masu-ázumi         | <i>fasting</i>   |
| Ma-ázumchi | ma-ázumchia | ma-ázumta          | ”                |
| Mai-ara    | mai-ara     | masu-ara           | <i>lending</i>   |
| Mai-aro    | mai-aro     | masu-aro           | <i>borrowing</i> |
| Ma-ari     | ma-aria     | ma-ara             | ” <i>lending</i> |
| Mai-so     | mai-so      | masu-so            | <i>loving</i>    |
| Ma-soyi    | ma-soyia    | ma-soya,<br>masowa | ”                |

This participle is further treated under the verb.

### PAST PARTICIPLE

The past participle passive, as in all languages, can be used as an adjective. Its formation is examined under the verb—

| MASC.    | FEM.      | PLURAL  | ENGLISH                 |
|----------|-----------|---------|-------------------------|
| Arare    | araria    | ararɗ   | <i>lent or borrowed</i> |
| Ramtachɗ | ramtachia | ramtatu | ”                       |

The formation of the feminine and plural is strictly regular.

<sup>1</sup> According to Mischlich.



## USE OF NOUNS AS ADJECTIVES

Names of countries ending in “-chi” can be used as adjectives, but unchanged for gender or number—

|                               |                 |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Hausanchi                     | <i>Hausa</i>    |
| Larabachi (K), Larabanchi (S) | <i>Arab</i>     |
| Fulanchi                      | <i>Fula</i>     |
| Turanchi                      | <i>European</i> |
| Sudanchi                      | <i>African</i>  |

As

|                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| Magana larabachi  | <i>Arab speech</i>             |
| Daki-n-sudanchi   | <i>Soudanese hut</i>           |
| Dakuna-n-sudanchi | <i>Soudanese huts (houses)</i> |

but

|                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| Riga-l-hausa   | <i>Hausa cloth</i>  |
| Riguna-n-hausa | <i>Hausa cloths</i> |

For living things these forms are not used. The personal forms are used in apposition, and show gender and number—

|                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Doki ba-larabe  | <i>Arab horse</i>      |
| Dawaki larabawa | <i>Arab horses</i>     |
| Rago ba-haushe  | <i>Hausa ram</i>       |
| Raguna hausawa  | <i>Hausa rams</i>      |
| Akwia hausu     | <i>Hausa she-goat</i>  |
| Awaki hausawa   | <i>Hausa she-goats</i> |
| or awaki hausu  |                        |

## REDUPLICATION

Simple adjectives can be reduplicated. Their meaning may be in some cases emphasised thereby, but equally the idea to be conveyed is “somewhat” or “something like.” This can be best seen from examples—

Kadan kadan      *very little or very small*

but

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Yaro mugu mugu shi ke=Shina<br>kaman yaro mugu | <i>He is like a bad boy</i>    |
| Dogo dogo shi ke = Shina<br>kaman dogo         | <i>He is tallish</i>           |
| Sabo sabo shi ke=Shina kaman sabo              | <i>It is like a new one</i>    |
| Baki-baki                                      | <i>blackish or dark bluish</i> |
| Bakin kerrin                                   | <i>very black</i>              |
| Fari-fari                                      | <i>whitish or grey</i>         |
| Ja-ja  | <i>reddish</i>                 |
| Shudi-shudi                                    | <i>light bluish</i>            |
| Kore-kore                                      | <i>light green</i>             |

NOTE.—The masculine singular form seems alone to be used.

Compare also—

Kul kusa

*very near*

Ina da wata turuba keokeowa

*I have (know) another path, a  
very good one*

### SYNTAX

1. When the adjective is used attributively it may either follow the noun it qualifies, agreeing with it in gender and number, or it may precede the noun with the copulative preposition “n” (“na”), *of*, agreeing in gender and number. With the latter method, however, the plural is less commonly found.

Examples of adjective following

#### MASCULINE SINGULAR.

Ta gani gida maikeao

*She saw a fine house*

Kai mutum maigaskia ne

*You are a man of truth*

Ta sa zane maizitaria?

*Does she put on garments of gold?*

Minene dawa? Wani iri-n-jan-kwaya kankane (Note construction with two adjectives)

*What is guinea corn? A small  
kind of grain*

Ta zuba rua kadan

*She poured out a little water*

Suka sa ta chiki-n-wani daki babu keao

*They put her into an unpleasant  
room*

Mutum maras-kurdi kama-n-sariki maras-karifi shi ke

*A poor man is like a king with-  
out power*

#### FEMININE SINGULAR

Mache tagari tana kula da iyalinta

*A good woman takes care of her  
family*

Ke dia takwarai che

*You are a good daughter*

Mache mai-azume tana zamne chan

*A fasting woman sits yonder*

#### PLURAL

Dia-n-itache ninanu anchiresu

*The ripe fruits are plucked*

Ki ba su dia-n-durumi ninanu

*Give them the ripe fruits of the  
“durumi” tree*

Dawaki masugudu suna chan

*Yonder are galloping horses*

Ga dawaki masugudu chan

*See the horses galloping there*

Bature dayawa ya mutu (Note the construction)

*Many white men died*

## Examples of adjectives preceding noun :—

## MASCULINE SINGULAR

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Baba - n - mutum ba shi yi - n -<br>hakka             | <i>A great man would not do so</i>                              |
| Nauyi-n-kaya-n-nan ya fi kari-<br>fina                | <i>This heavy load is too much for me</i>                       |
| Ni karami-n-yaro gara ka bani<br>karami-n-kaya        | <i>I am a small boy ; you ought to give<br/>me a small load</i> |
| Bani tafasashe-n-rua                                  | <i>Give me boiled water</i>                                     |
| Ya kai su ga dogo-n-daji                              | <i>He led them to a large forest</i>                            |
| Ya kasshie baba-n-bunsuru                             | <i>He killed a large he-goat</i>                                |
| Karifi - n - mache sai yawa - n -<br>magana (proverb) | <i>The strength of a woman is much<br/>talk</i>                 |
| Duka-n-mutane suka gan' shi<br>yana tafia             | <i>All men saw him going</i>                                    |

## PLURAL

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Wani iri - n - abinchi babake - n -<br>mutane su ke chi ? | <i>What kind of food do black men<br/>eat ?</i> |
|---|---|

2. The possessive pronoun is appended to the noun, not to the adjective—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ta tafi ga wuri-n-ta dafari enda<br>ta fito | <i>She went to the first place she<br/>had come from</i>                                  |
| Ya che ga dia-r-sa baba                     | <i>He said to his eldest daughter (lit.,<br/>he said to his daughter—the big<br/>one)</i> |

3. "Duka," which has no feminine nor plural form, can be attached to either a singular or plural noun—

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Ya fi gida duka                      | <i>It surpasses every house</i>         |
| Gari duka ya mutu                    | <i>The whole town died</i>              |
| Abu duka da ni ke da shi ya<br>karba | <i>He has received everything I had</i> |

*See also example in par. 1.*

|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| Rana duka     | <i>All day</i>            |
| Sun tafi duka | <i>They have all gone</i> |

*Predicative Use of the Adjective*

The verb "to be" is employed, the form "ne" being enclitic, as also is its feminine form "che"; but the form "ke" is used with a pronoun—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ni talaka ne                               | <i>I am poor</i>                                      |
| Daki-n-nan kankane ne                      | <i>This room is small</i>                             |
| Karre da kurege ramamu su ke               | <i>The dog and the fox were lean</i>                  |
| Masa - n - nan antoya su? ii,<br>toyayu ne | <i>Are these cakes baked? Yes, they<br/>are baked</i> |
| Ba duka mutane su ke miagu ba              | <i>Not all men are bad</i>                            |

All adjectives formed with "da," being from their nature only predicative, the verb "to be" is usually implied.

The form of pronoun that is used is that ending in "na" for the most part. It is to be noted that in the negative form the "na" is cast off—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Shina da keao                           | <i>It is fine (lit., It is with fineness)</i>         |
| Suna dabam                              | <i>They are different</i>                             |
| Bisa tana da rai tukun                  | <i>The animal is still alive</i>                      |
| Shina da araha (tsada)                  | <i>It is cheap (dear)</i>                             |
| Doki maigudu shina da anfani<br>kwarai  | <i>A horse which gallops well is of<br/>great use</i> |
| Ba ni da yungwa                         | <i>I am not hungry</i>                                |
| Ba shi da nauyi kama-n-saura-<br>n-kaya | <i>It is not heavy like the rest of the<br/>loads</i> |

*Circumlocution to avoid Use of Adjectives*

In most West African languages it is found that the number of adjectives is very small.

They are numerous in Hausa, but, nevertheless, many compound words which are treated as adjectives are readily divisible into their component parts which are not adjectives, and any idea that an adjective is being made use of can be cast aside.

Besides the use of "da," the two commonest methods in Hausa for expressing the equivalent of the adjective is the use of the preposition "gare," *to, towards*, with a noun, and to use the verb "yi" also with a noun. The

verb "ji," to hear, feel, is also so used, but to a more limited extent:—

*Gare*

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Abinchi-n-nan zafi gare shi for | <i>This food is hot</i>                 |
| Abinchi-n-nan shina da zafi     |   |
| Zuma dadi gare ta               | <i>Honey is sweet</i>                   |
| Mutume-n-wofi ba ya taba fada-  | <i>A worthless man never speaks the</i> |
| n-gaskia ba, reshi - n - kumia  | <i>truth ; he is shameless</i>          |
| gare shi                        |   |

*Yi*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Na yi murna                  | <i>I am glad (lit., I make joy)</i>    |
| Ya yi mini kunche            | <i>It is (too) narrow for me</i>       |
| Ruanga shina da zafi, bai yi | <i>This water is hot, and not cold</i> |
| sanyi ba                     |  |

*Ji*

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| Na ji dadi | <i>I am happy (lit., I feel sweetness)</i> |
|------------|--|

## COMPARISON

The degrees of comparison are expressed by a circumlocution in Hausa the same as in other languages in West Africa.

*Comparative Degree*1. Use of "fi," *surpass*, with an abstract noun.

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Ya fi ni karifi               | <i>He is stronger than I (lit., he surpasses me (in) strength)</i>                           |
| Ya fi ni da karifi            | <i>(Not so good as the foregoing)</i>  |
| Doki ya fi rago girima        | <i>A horse is bigger than a ram</i>  |
| Ya fi shi karami or ya fi shi | <i>He is smaller than he (The latter</i>   |
| kankanta                      | <i>is the more correct usage, "kankanta" being a noun, whereas "karami" is an adjective)</i> |
| Ya fi kowa girima             | <i>He is greater than any one</i>  |
| Daki-n-nan ya fi daki-n-chan  | <i>This room is bigger than that</i>   |
| girima                        |  |
| Mi kuna so ya fi wannan ?     | <i>What do you want better than this ?</i>   |
| Riga-l-nan ta fi wachan kcao  | <i>This coat is better than that</i>   |
| Dana ya fi naka tsawo, amma   | <i>My son is taller than yours, but</i>  |
| naka ya fi nawa kauri         | <i>yours is stouter than mine</i>  |
| Mutum wanda ya bi ta gaskia   | <i>The man who pursues truth is</i>  |
| ya fi wanda ke ratse hainya   | <i>happier than he who follows</i>   |
| fari-n-zuchia                 | <i>error</i>   |
| Shi maifadda ne, amma matasa  | <i>He is a quarrelsome man, but his</i>  |
| ta fi shi yawa-n-magana       | <i>wife can wrangle more than he</i>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Tafia da rana ta fi tafia da fari-<br>n-wata gajia | <i>Travelling by day is more tiring<br/>than travelling by moonlight</i> |
| Minene ka ke so wanda ya fi<br>wannan ?            | <i>What do you want better than this ?</i>                               |

In sentences where in English comparison is expressed by adverbs, "fi" with an abstract noun is used in Hausa—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Da-n-chiako-n-zabua ya fi da-n-<br>chiako-n-kaza samli-n-girima | <i>The young guinea-fowl grows more<br/>quickly than the young chicken<br/>(samli - n - girima = quickness of<br/>growth)</i> |
| Jiki ya fi kune ji (proverb)                                    | <i>The body hears better than the ear</i>   |
| Ka fi shi yi-n-chiniki, don<br>wannan na fi sonka da shi        | <i>You trade better than he, for this<br/>reason I prefer you to him</i>  |

Note also—

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Allah akber da ku | <i>God is more powerful than you</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|

2. To compare ideas, not things, the words "gara" and "guma" ("gwoma") are used; also "gwanda" in a similar sense in Kano principally—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Gara hakka                                      | <i>It is better so</i>   |
| Guma yao da jia                                 | <i>Better to-day than yesterday</i>                            |
| Da na yi karia gara en mutu                     | <i>I would rather die than tell a lie</i>                      |
| Da na amre shi guma mugu-n-<br>chiwo ya kama ni | <i>Rather than marry him may an evil<br/>sickness seize me</i> |
| Da babu wawa gwanda da wawa<br>(proverb)        | <i>It is better to have a fool than no<br/>one</i>             |

3. "Better" as applied to health is expressed by the nouns "dama" and "rongomi" with "ji," to feel.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ka ji dama ya fi jia ?                        | <i>Do you feel better than yesterday ?</i>                  |
| Na ji rongomi yao                             | <i>I feel better to-day</i>                                 |
| Na ji dama yanzu; zazabi ya<br>sake ni        | <i>I feel better now; the fever has left<br/>me</i>         |
| Ka ji dama kadan ?                            | <i>Do you feel a little better ?</i>                        |
| Shi talaka ne, ni ma, ina da<br>kurdi da dama | <i>He is a poor man, but I have<br/>money in moderation</i> |

4. To express the English "too" with an adjective several methods are adopted:—

(a) Combination of the material particle "ma" with the verb "fi," to surpass—

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| Mafi kunche | <i>Too narrow</i> |
|-------------|-------------------|

(b) "Yi," *to do*, followed by the preposition "ma"—

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Ya yi mini (for ma ni) wuya | <i>It is too difficult for me</i>   |
| Kurdi-n-sa ia yi mini yawa  | <i>The price is too much for me</i> |

The meaning of "very" is equally conveyed—

Tsia ta yi masa yawa *He was very poor*

(c) By the use of "fi."

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya fi ni wuya                                | <i>It is too difficult for me</i>                      |
| Nauyi - n - kaya - n - nan ya fi<br>karifina | <i>This heavy load is too much for my<br/>strength</i> |

(d) By the verb "faskare," *overcome*, etc.—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ya faskare ni dauka                     | <i>It is too heavy for me to lift (lit.,<br/>It is beyond my strength (to) lift)</i> |
| Babu abinda ya faskare mutane<br>Engliz | <i>Nothing is too difficult for the<br/>English</i>                                  |

5. The verb "faye," *exceed*, is used as an equivalent for "fi." It may also be translated "very" or "too"—

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Yara sun faye da worigi  | <i>The boys were very fond of play</i> |
| Gidanga ya faye kankanta | <i>This house is too small</i>         |
| Ka fayi barikonchi       | <i>You jest too much</i>               |

6. "Too" and "very" may also be expressed by the preposition "gare," *towards*—

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Abinchi-n-nan zafi gareshi | <i>This food is hot (implying too<br/>hot to eat)</i> |
|----------------------------|---|

It may here be observed that where in English words of a comparative force are used, in African languages exactly the same meaning is conveyed by merely making a positive statement, of which the foregoing is an example.

7. "More" used absolutely in English can be expressed by the noun "kari," *abundance*.

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Ba na so kari; ya issa | <i>I do not want more; it is enough</i> |
|------------------------|---|

8. "Yi," *do*, may also be used in the sense of "equal to"—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Kura ta fi damisa karifi-n-jiki,<br>amma ba ta yi ita hanzeri ba | <i>The hyena is stronger than the<br/>leopard, but is not equal to her<br/>in activity</i> |
|--|--|



*Superlative Degree*

The superlative degree is expressed by :—

1. “Fi,” *to surpass*, followed by “duka,” *all*—

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Ya fi duka karifi                   | <i>He is the strongest (lit., He excels all (in) strength)</i> |
| Mutume - n - nan ya fi duka hankali | <i>This man is the cleverest of all</i>                        |
| Allah yi fi duka girima             | <i>God is the greatest of all</i>                              |
| Wannan ya fi duka nauyi             | <i>This is the heaviest</i>                                    |

2. By “gaba-n-duka da,” *before all*—

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| Yana (or shi ne) gaba-n-duka da karifi | <i>He is the strongest</i> |
| Shi ne gaba-n-su duka                  | <i>He is the greatest</i>  |

3. By “gaba ga duka,” *before all*—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Amma Tebib shina da bara, shi ne baba gaba ga baruansa duka | <i>But Tebib had a servant who was chief of all the servants</i> |
|---|--|

4. By “ga,” *to, only*—

|                                    |                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Yana (or shi ne) da karifi ga duka | <i>He is strongest</i> |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|

5. A reduplicated form of “fi” is sometimes used in forming either comparative degree or superlative—

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Wannan mafichi daga wadanan | <i>This (is) the best of these</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|

6. The word “very” in English may be expressed by “faye,” and in other ways as seen under the comparative—

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Makafi sun faye talauchi | <i>Blind men are very poor</i> |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|

It may also be expressed by reduplication—

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Kadan kadan | <i>Very little</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

## NUMERALS

*The Cardinals*

(Those given first are in commonest use)

- 1 Daia (pronounced generally “dca”), guda
- 2 Biu
- 3 Uku



- 4 Fudu (hudu in Katsina dialect)  
 5 Biar, bial, biat (in Sokoto)  
 6 Shidda  
 7 Bokoi. Written bakoi  
 8 Tokos. Written takos  
 9 Tara  
 10 Goma  
 11 Goma sha daia *or*, in continuous counting, "sha daia" for short  
 12 Goma sha biu *or* sha biu  
 13 Goma sha uku *or* sha uku  
 14 Goma sha fudu *or* sha fudu  
 15 Goma sha biar *or* sha biar  
 16 Goma sha shidda *or* sha shidda  
 17 Goma sha bokoi *or* sha bokoi  
 18 Ashirin biu babu *or* ashirin gaira biu  
 19 Ashirin daia babu *or* ashirin gaira daia *or* babu daia  
 20 Ashirin, ishirin; hauya; laso (S); gomia biu  
 21 Ashirin da daia  
 22 Ashirin da biu  
 28 Talatin biu babu  
 29 Talatin daia babu  
 30 Talatin; gomia uku; laso da goma; hauya da goma  
 40 Arbain; gomia fudu  
 50 Hamsin  
 60 Sittin  
 70 Sebbain  
 80 Tamanin  
 90 Tissain

The foregoing decades can also be constructed with gomia, laso, and hauya

- 98 Dari gaira biu; dari biu babu  
 99 Dari gaira daia *or* dari daia babu  
 100 Dari (deri); mia; minya; zangu  
 150 Mia wa hamsin *or* dari da hamsin  
 200 Metin; metain (*Not* dari biu)  
 300 Dari uku  
 400 Arba mia; arba minya  
 500 Hamsa mia; hamsa minya; dari biar  
 600 Dari shidda  
 700 Dari bokoi  
 800 Dari tokos  
 900 Alu gaira mia  
 1,000 Dubu; alif; zambar (*rare*); zangu goma  
 1,100 Alu wa minya  
 1,200 Alu wa metin  
 1,300 Dubu (*or* alif) da dari uku  
 1,400 Alu wa arba mia  
 1,500 Alu wa hamsa mia (*or* minya)  
 1,600 Dubu da dari shidda  
 1,700 Dubu da dari bokoi

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| 1,800     | Alfin gaira metin                                    |
| 1,900     | Alfin gaira minya ( <i>or</i> mia); alfin gaira dari |
| 2,000     | Alfin; alfain; zambar biu ( <i>Not</i> dubu biu)     |
| 3,000     | Talata; zambar uku                                   |
| 4,000     | Arba; zambar fudu                                    |
| 5,000     | Hamsa; zambar biar                                   |
| 6,000     | Sitta; zambar shidda                                 |
| 7,000     | Sebaa; zambar bokoi                                  |
| 8,000     | Tamania; zambar tokos                                |
| 9,000     | Tessaa; zambar tara                                  |
| 10,000    | Zambar goma  |
| 100,000   | Zambar dari  |
| 200,000   | Zambar metin   |
| 1,000,000 | Zambar dubu; zambar alif                             |

### (1) *Notes on the Cardinals*

*Guda*.—The word “guda” means *head* or *unit*. It is often used together with the other numerals below ten, as well as being used alone instead of “daia,” as—“guda daia” or “guda” simply, 1; “gudu uku,” 3; ashirin da guda biar, 25. (*See* further under syntax of numerals.)

*Goma sha daia*, etc.—In counting the “goma” is commonly omitted for brevity, a feature which is also found in most other West African languages where the expression is too long or cumbersome.

*Ashirin biu babu*.—The two numbers next below the decades are expressed by using “babu,” *nothing* or *without*, or “gaira,” *less*, as—“talatin daia babu,” 29; “dari gaira biu,” 98. This system is also applied to the two decades below the hundreds after the first hundred, as “metin gaira ashirin,” 180.

*Hauya*.—The meaning is *a score*, and it is only used in counting cowries, as—“hauya biu,” 40; “hauya uku,” 60.

*Laso*, 20, is also used in counting cowries.

*Zangu*, 100—Used in counting cowries.

*Gomia*.—The pure Hausa plural form of “goma.” It was the form in use before the introduction and common acceptance of the Arabic forms for all numerals between 20 and 100. It is still preferred among parts of the population that have come less under the Arabic influence and are uneducated. The merchants, educated

persons, mallams, etc., naturally affect the Arabic forms for preference.

*Kororo*.—This word is used south and west of Zaria to denote a bag containing 20,000 cowries.

*Numerals of Arabic Origin*.—In some of the higher numerals the Arabic form has so far taken the place of the pure Hausa forms that it is quite incorrect to use the latter, which are obsolete. This applies, amongst others, to the numerals 200, 400, 900.

*Compound Numbers*.—The rule for forming compound numbers is to place the largest numbers first and connect each succeeding numeral by inserting “da,” *and*, as—“dubu da dari tokos da ashirin da daia,” 1821. The only exception is that “sha” takes the place of “da” from 11 to 17.

*Wa* is the Arabic for “and.” It is used when all the numerals are of Arabic origin.

### (2) *Cardinal Numerals—Gender and Number*

The cardinal numerals do not vary for gender, but those up to ten can take a plural form on rare occasions. The plurals are:—

|      |        |        |         |
|------|--------|--------|---------|
| Daia | none   | Shidda | shidodi |
| Biu  | biunai | Bokoi  | bakoa   |
| Uku  | ukoki  | Tokos  | takoshi |
| Fudu | fudodi | Tara   | tarori  |
| Biar | biani  | Goma   | gomia   |

### (3) *Combination of Cardinal Numerals with Personal Pronouns*

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Daia-n-mu or daia-mu | <i>one of us</i>    |
| Biu-n-mu             | <i>two of us</i>    |
| Uku-n-mu             | <i>three of us</i>  |
| Fudu-n-mu            | <i>four of us</i>   |
| Biani-n-mu           | <i>five of us</i>   |
| Shidda-n-mu          | <i>six of us</i>    |
| Bakoa-n-mu           | <i>seven of us</i>  |
| Takoshi-n-mu         | <i>eight of us</i>  |
| Tara-n-mu            | <i>nine of us</i>   |
| Goma-n-mu            | <i>ten of us</i>    |
| Ashirini-n-mu        | <i>twenty of us</i> |
| Hamsini-n-mu         | <i>fifty of us</i>  |

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Tissaini-n-mu            | <i>ninety of us</i>     |
| Dari-n-mu or darini-n-mu | <i>a hundred of us</i>  |
| Alifi-n-mu               | <i>a thousand of us</i> |

“Ku” you, “su,” them, may be substituted for “mu” as necessary, as—

|           |                   |           |                    |
|-----------|-------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Daia-n-ku | <i>one of you</i> | daia-n-su | <i>one of them</i> |
|           |                   | Biu-n-su  | <i>two of them</i> |

For the numbers above “two,” however, it would seem to be better, and certainly more usual, to use a more extended phrase, as—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Fudu daga chiki-n-ku                         | <i>four of you</i>                                 |
| Biu daga chiki-n-mu                          | <i>two of us</i>                                   |
| Daia-n-su shina chewa wannan<br>nama da kiba | <i>One of them was saying this meat<br/>is fat</i> |

When the cardinal number represents the whole of the assemblage instead of a portion, as above, the suffix “-di” is added.

|                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| Daiadi-n-nan     | <i>this one</i>           |
| Biudi-n-nan      | <i>these two</i>          |
| Duka ukudi-n-nan | <i>all three of these</i> |
| Fududi-n-su      | <i>the four of them</i>   |
| Biardi           | <i>the five</i>           |
| Shiddadi         | <i>the six</i>            |
| Bokoidi          | <i>the seven</i>          |
| Tokosdi          | <i>the eight</i>          |
| Taradi           | <i>the nine</i>           |
| Gomadi           | <i>the ten</i>            |
| Daridi           | <i>the hundred</i>        |
| Dubudi           | <i>the thousand</i>       |

#### (4) *Syntax of Cardinal Numerals*

The cardinal numerals usually follow the noun they qualify. The noun as a rule takes the plural form, though this is not invariably the practice, and the numeral “two” especially almost invariably follows the noun in the singular number.

If the numeral precedes, it only does so in such cases as those given in the previous paragraph, and “n” is used as a copulative.

|                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Mutum biu                    | <i>two men</i>                       |
| Shina da bindiga da baki biu | <i>He has a double-barrelled gun</i> |
| Ka ani awaki talatin         | <i>Give me thirty goats</i>          |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ki kawo mini moda zinaria<br>zambar dubu   | <i>Bring me a million gold cups</i>   |
| Ina tamaha mutane da suka<br>kama tare da ni ba su fi ba<br>dari biu ko dari uku | <i>I think the people who were caught<br/>with me were not more than two<br/>or three hundred</i> |
| Na gani taguaye biu anyashie<br>su bisa hainya suna kuka                         | <i>I saw two twin children thrown on<br/>the road crying</i>                                      |
| Rakuminmu daia   | <i>One of our camels</i>  |
| Su duka biu sun mutu   | <i>The two of them died</i>   |

After such nouns as those compounded with “mai” a simple noun may be inserted before the numeral—

|                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Masu-gaskia mutum ashirin da daia | <i>Twenty-one righteous men</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|

When the noun is qualified by both an adjective and a cardinal numeral, the numeral may be placed immediately after the noun with the adjective next, the latter being treated as in apposition to the noun—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ido-n-sa daia, mai-girima, ga<br>tsaka-n-hanchi   | <i>One of his eyes, a large one, was<br/>on the middle of the nose</i>   |
| Muka tafi da barua . n . Tebib<br>biu, da bara-n-sariki tare da<br>bawa-n-sa daia, kuruma | <i>We went with two of Tebib's servants,<br/>and with the king's servant, to-<br/>gether with a slave who was deaf</i> |

*Guda.*—The following are examples of the uses of “guda,”  
*one*—

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Guda nawa ?                    | <i>How many ?</i>                           |
| Kwoi guda nawa na sayerua ne ? | <i>How many eggs are there for sale ?</i>   |
| Guda . . . guda                | <i>One . . . another</i>                    |
| Shi do guda, guda ta tsire     | <i>(If) he takes one, the other escapes</i> |
| Guda guda = daia daia          | <i>One at a time</i>                        |

*Daia.*—“Daia,” when used correlatively, corresponds with the expression “the one . . . the other”—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Mache daia tana da dukia da-<br>yawa, mache daia tana da<br>dukia kadan | <i>One woman had much property,<br/>the other woman had but little<br/>property</i> |
|---|---|

“Daia” can also be translated “the same”—

|                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Mu duka muka zamna ga wuri daia | <i>We all sat at the same place</i> |
| Su duka daia ne                 | <i>They are all the same</i>        |

“Daia” can never be used independently as a noun as it may be in English. A concrete noun must always be added—

Mutum daia shina kora mutum *One man is driving two before*  
 biu *him*

The cardinals can be used as adverbs.

Ya yi kuka daia. Ya yi kuka *He cried out once. He cried out*  
 biu *twice. This is literally He made*  
*one cry, etc.*

Na ji daia daia *I understand a little*

The verb “to be” is used with numerals as follows—

Kurdinsa ba su dayawa; zam *Its price is not much; it is*  
 bar dari da hamsin ne *150,000 cowries*  
 (100,050=zambar dari da guda hamsin)

### 5. Etymology of Numerals

Taking the languages of West Africa as a whole, the commonest system of numeration is on a base of five, more or less disguised or evident, with the higher numbers on the basis of twenties (scores).

The Hausa numeration, on the other hand, is purely denary, like several languages to the southward of it and to the south-eastward. In Hausa, though the introduction of the Arabic has dispossessed many of the purely indigenous names, the older names are still used for counting cowries, which it is more convenient to deal with in twenties—that is, the sum of all the fingers and toes, making “one man complete.”

The following are the etymologies of most of the numerals:—

*Daia*.—Uncertain and difficult to trace, as is the word for “one” in very many languages.

*Guda*.—Compare “gudio” in Doai; “gade” in Bode; “gadsı” in Ngodsın.

*Biu*.—Compare “ful” in Ron; “vul” in Sura; “bolo” in Bolanchi; “vuel” in Montol; “vel” in Ankwe; “flo” in Gurka; “bab” in Angas.

*Uku*.—Compare “kun” (“kul”) in Sura “kun” in Montol, Ankwe, and Gurka; “kunu” in Bolanchi, Tangale,



and Awok; "kwan" in Angas; "koan" in Ngodsın; "akoan" in Bode; "ko" in Doai; "kuji" in Buta.

*Fudu*.—Compare "fudu" in Ngodsın, Doai, and Bode; "fudi" in Buta; "fodo" in Bolanchi; "pu" in Ron; "feir" in Sura; "fer" in Ankwe and Montol; "fier" in Angas.

*Biar*.—Compare "beddi" ("badi") in Bolanchi; "pad" ("pat") in Sura; "pad" in Montol, Ankwe; "pfad" in Doai; "fad" in Ngodsın; "pate" in Angas; "puat" in Tangale and Awok.

*Shidda*.—Of Arabic origin.

*Bokoi (bakoi)*.—If the numerals seven and eight, as well as sometimes six and nine, are examined in the languages mentioned in connection with the foregoing numerals, it is found that the following syllables represent "five": Sura, "po"; Bolanchi, "bau," "bo"; Montol, "pa"; Ankwe, "po," "pu"; Angas, "po." There is in these syllables some similarity to "ba" in "bakoi," but this syllable is not found in Hausa in any other numeral. As to the second syllable in "bokoi," it seems to have no relationship anywhere.

*Tokos*.—No sure etymology seems to offer itself for this numeral either. "To" is the root for "five" in the BaNtu languages, and "kos" may be connected with "uku." It would require to be explained, though, how a BaNtu root should have come in.

*Tara*.—Nothing.

*Goma*.—Compare "guma" in Ngodsın; "goma" in Doai; "guamo" in Tangale.

The decades twenty to ninety are all of Arabic origin, but little changed.

*Dari* is a pure Hausa word.

*Minya* and *mia*.—Both of Arabic origin.

*Zangu*.—Uncertain.

*Metin* and *metain*.—Arabic.

*Dubu* is also found in Kanuri as "dubu"; "debu" in Teda, Bagirmi, Longone, Mandara; and "thba" in Coptic.

*Alif*.—Arabic.

*Zambar*.—Compare "diomber" in Songhay.

*Alfin*.—Arabic.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS

The ordinal numbers are formed by prefixing the genitive particle to the cardinals, "na" for the masculine, "ta" for the feminine (there being no plural), with one exception.

This exception is "the first," and, as is customary in most languages, West African included, it is not formed from the word "one." In Hausa the word "na-fari" is derived from the verb "fara," to begin—

| MASC.   | FEM.         | ENGLISH       |
|---------|--------------|---------------|
| na-fari | ta-fari      | <i>first</i>  |
| na-biu  | ta-biu       | <i>second</i> |
| na-uku  | ta-uku, etc. | <i>third</i>  |

As in other West African languages, after "ten," when the numerals become compound words, the ordinal form is commonly dropped, and the cardinals are reverted to.

Connected with the ordinal numbers and formed in the same way are some adjectives—

| MASC.    | FEM.     | ENGLISH         |
|----------|----------|-----------------|
| Na-baya  | ta-baya  | <i>last</i>     |
| Na-gaba  | ta-gaba  | <i>foremost</i> |
| Na-tsaka | ta-tsaka | <i>middle</i>   |
| Na-bisa  | ta-bisa  | <i>upper</i>    |
| Na-kasa  | ta-kasa  | <i>lower</i>    |

Also

|       |              |        |             |
|-------|--------------|--------|-------------|
| Farko | <i>first</i> | Karshe | <i>last</i> |
|-------|--------------|--------|-------------|

*Examples of Syntax of Ordinals*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na zamna ga wurina na-fari  | <i>I sat down in my place first</i>  |
| Mutum uku su tashi, biu daga<br>chiki-n-su su dauko rua, na-<br>uku-n-su shi nemo itache              | <i>Let three men get up, two of them<br/>to draw water, the third one to<br/>fetch wood</i>                                    |
| Farko-n-dawaki  | <i>The first of the horses</i>   |
| Karshe-n-dawaki   | <i>The last of the horses</i>  |
| Da sunka ketare daia, biu, a<br>na-uku sunka issa wuri-n-kasa   | <i>When they had crossed one, two, at<br/>the third they reached dry land</i>  |
| Yaro ya yi sukua rakumi so-<br>uku, a na-fudu ya tafo ya<br>dauki yarinia ya ajieta bisa<br>rakuminsa | <i>The boy galloped the camel three<br/>times, at the fourth he came, he<br/>took up the girl, he put her on<br/>his camel</i> |



## ADVERBIAL NUMBERS OR MULTIPLICATIVES

These are formed by prefixing to the cardinals "so," or, as it is sometimes pronounced, "sau"—

|         |                  |         |                      |        |                    |
|---------|------------------|---------|----------------------|--------|--------------------|
| So-daia | <i>once</i>      | So-biu  | <i>twice</i>         | So-uku | <i>three times</i> |
| So-goma | <i>ten times</i> | So-dari | <i>hundred times</i> |        |                    |

*Derivation*

This seems to be the same word as "sau," *foot-print* or *sole of the foot*, and so in combination with the numerals it acquires the idea of a step. Compare the corresponding use in Twi of "peng," *a stroke*; in Mende "heima," *sitting down*; in Angas "shi," *a foot*: all of which go to prove that "so" is a noun.

*Syntax*

|                          |    |   |
|--------------------------|----|---|
| So-daia kuma             |    | <i>Once again</i>                         |
| So-nawa ka tafi Sokoto?  | Na | <i>How often have you been to Sokoto?</i> |
| tafi Sokoto so-uku       |    | <i>I have been to Sokoto three times</i>  |
| Uku-uku biu nawa ke nan? |    | <i>Twice three are how many?</i>          |

## DISTRIBUTIVES

The distributive numerals are formed by repeating the cardinals—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya kedaya shilling goma goma<br>(Kedaya (S) = kirga (K))   | <i>He counted them out by ten shillings</i>                       |
| Ya bada riguna biar biar ga<br>yara-n-sariki               | <i>He gave five cloths to each of the<br/>chief's sons</i>        |
| Ya aikesu biu biu  | <i>He sent them two by two</i>                                    |
| Ya bada daia daia ga kowane-<br>n-su                       | <i>He gave one to each of them</i>                                |
| Kada ka kirga kurdinka shidda<br>shidda, kirgasu biar biar | <i>Do not count your cowries in sixes<br/>count them in fives</i> |
| Biasu dubu dubu  | <i>Pay them a thousand each</i>                                   |

*Examples akin*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Nawa nawa?                                  | <i>How many each?</i>                    |
| Guda nawa?                                  | <i>How many?</i>                         |
| Kwoi guda nawa na sayerua<br>ne?            | <i>How many eggs are there for sale?</i> |
| Nawa nawa anasayerua? (or<br>akesayesda su) | <i>How much are they sold for each?</i>  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Nawa anasayesda su ?   | <i>How much are they (as a whole) ?</i>   |
| Ni kan ba ma-aikitana kurdi<br>metin da hamsin hamsin<br>kwana daia daia | <i>I give my servants two hundred and<br/>fifty cowries each daily</i>                          |
| Massara kurdinsa goma sha bial<br>sha bial ne kwanaki-n-damana           | <i>Indian corn is fifteen cowries a-piece<br/>in the wet season</i>                             |
| Doiya guda nawa ka sayo ? Ta<br>dari uku a baki - n - hamsin<br>hamsin   | <i>How many yams did you buy ?<br/>Three hundred cowries' worth at<br/>fifty (cowries each)</i> |

It will be noticed from the above sentences that in repeating the numeral to form the distributive idea, if it is compound only the latter part is repeated.

### FRACTIONAL NUMBERS

These are, with the exception of "a half," borrowed from the Arabic, and are rarely used.

"Half" is expressed by "shashi," of which the etymology is not known, or "rabi," from "raba," to divide. Each of these words may be translated by "a part" instead of an exact "half," and this is found to be also the case in many other West African languages.

The fractions of Arabic origin are—

|                  |                            |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| Sulusi           | <i>a third</i>             |
| Rubui            | <i>a fourth, a quarter</i> |
| Humusi           | <i>a fifth</i>             |
| Sudusi           | <i>a sixth</i>             |
| Subui            | <i>a seventh</i>           |
| Sumuni or tumuni | <i>an eighth</i>           |
| Tusui            | <i>a ninth</i>             |
| Ushuri           | <i>a tenth</i>             |

The plurals are "sulusiai," "rubuai," "ushurai," etc.

All these numbers can be expressed by a circumlocution, which is always resorted to for fractional parts smaller than a tenth.

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>One-eleventh</i>   | = daia (or guda) chiki-n-goma sha daia |
| <i>One-twelfth</i>    | = daia (or guda) chiki-n-goma sha biu  |
| <i>One-thirteenth</i> | = daia (guda) chiki-n-goma sha uku     |
| <i>Three-sevenths</i> | = subuai uku                           |

"A tenth" as applied to a tithe or land tax is called "zaka."

*Syntax*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya bani sashi                            | <i>He gave me half</i>  |
| Sun bani sashi-n-uku                     | <i>They gave me the third part</i>  |
| Na raba shi uku, na ba kowa<br>rabo-n-sa | <i>I divided it into three parts, I gave<br/>each his portion. (Note, in this<br/>the cardinal is used)</i> |
| Mun yi tafia shashi-n-rana               | <i>We travelled half the day</i>  |

## CHAPTER IV

### THE PRONOUN

The pronoun is divided into the following classes :—

1. Personal.
2. Relative.
3. Demonstrative.
4. Interrogative.
5. Indefinite.
6. Reflexive.
7. Emphatic.
8. Reciprocal.

#### 1. THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

The personal pronoun shows gender, number, and case.

(1) *Gender*.—This is distinguished in the 2nd and 3rd persons singular only. All the other persons, singular and plural, are of common gender.

(2) *Number*.—The plural pronouns are indicated by different words from the singular, and are not formed from the singular by the addition of regular plural terminations. The 2nd person is, however, possibly an exception.

(3) *Case*.—The vocative is distinguished in the 2nd person singular, as “kai!” masc., “ke!” fem., though these are in reality only the disjunctive forms of the personal pronoun. The objective case has different forms from the nominative in the singular, but not in the plural. The genitive case is formed in all persons except the 1st, by the use of the preposition “of” “n” (“na”) masc., “t” (“ta”) fem., with phonetic variation, as a prefix

to the objective form. The 1st person singular has a separate form, as will be seen. The dative is formed with the preposition "ma" to the objective form.

*Special Uses of the Personal Pronoun*

The 3rd personal pronoun is used in Hausa not only as a substitute for the noun, but also as a necessary complement to it when nominative. It thus assists to identify the gender of the noun. The tense of the verb is also dependent upon the pronoun, which takes different forms, either with or without the assistance of particles.

*Tabular Statement of the Various Forms of Personal Pronoun*

| SING.  | A                                       | B                        | C                              | D     |
|--------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|
| 1      | ni, nia <sup>1</sup>                    | ni                       | na                             | na    |
| 2 (m.) | kai                                     | ka; kai                  | ka                             | ka    |
| 2 (f.) | ke                                      | ki                       | ki                             | kin   |
| 3 (m.) | shi                                     | shi; sa; i               | ya; i (ye)                     | ya, i |
| 3 (f.) | ita                                     | ta                       | ta                             | ta    |
| PLU.   |   |                          |                                |       |
| 1      | mu                                      | mu                       | mu                             | mun   |
| 2      | ku                                      | ku                       | ku                             | kun   |
| 3      | su                                      | su                       | su                             | sun   |
| SING.  | E                                       | F                        | G                              |       |
| 1      | ina                                     | na                       | naa, nā; ni<br>(Sokoto)        |       |
| 2 (m.) | kana                                    | ka                       | kaa, kā                        |       |
| 2 (f.) | kina                                    | kika                     | kii, ki                        |       |
| 3 (m.) | shina; yana; <sup>2</sup><br>yina, yena | ya, yeka                 | shii, shī                      |       |
| 3 (f.) | tana                                    | ta                       | yaa, yā<br>taa, tā             |       |
| PLU.   |   |                          |                                |       |
| 1      | muna                                    | munka; muka <sup>3</sup> | muu, mu <i>also</i><br>mua, mā |       |
| 2      | kuna                                    | kunka; kuka              | kuu, ku <i>also</i><br>kua     |       |
| 3      | sunu                                    | sunka; suka              | suu, sū <i>also</i> sua,<br>sā |       |

<sup>1</sup> "Nia" is interrogative. See under interrogative pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> "Yana" is commonly written, but rare in conversation.

<sup>3</sup> "Munka" is of Sokoto origin; "muka" of Kano origin.

| SING.  | H             | I                     | J                |
|--------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1      | -na           | -ta                   | nawa             |
| 2 (m.) | -n-ka-        | -r-ka; -l-ka or -t-ka | naka             |
| 2 (f.) | -n-ki         | -r-ki; -l-ki, etc.    | naki             |
| 3 (m.) | -n-sa; -n-shi | -l-sa; -l-shi         | nasa; nashi; nai |
| 3 (f.) | -n-ta         | l-ta                  | nata             |
| PLU.   |               |                       |                  |
| 1      | -n-mu         | -l-mu                 | namu             |
| 2      | -n-ku         | -l-ku                 | naku             |
| 3      | -n-su         | -l-su                 | nasu             |

| SING.  | K                | L                          | M                   |
|--------|------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1      | tawa             | mani, mini, mana           | ni na               |
| 2 (m.) | taka             | maka, ma                   | kai ka              |
| 2 (f.) | taki             | maki, miki                 | ke ki               |
| 3 (m.) | tasa; tai. tashi | masa; mashi;<br>mishi; mai | shi ya              |
| 3 (f.) | tata             | mata                       | ita ta              |
| PLU.   |                  |                            |                     |
| 1      | tamu             | mamu; mumu;<br>muna; mana  | mu {<br>mu<br>munka |
| 2      | taku             | maku; muku                 | ku {<br>ku<br>kunka |
| 3      | tasu             | masu; musu                 | su {<br>su<br>sunka |

I. "l," "t," "r," are interchangeable for euphony.

H and I. The copulative may be omitted.

3rd person "sa" is of Kano origin; "shi" of Bornu origin. Both are in general use, but "i" is more commonly heard in Sokoto and Katsina.

In Kano "mass" is heard for "masa"; "tass" for "tasa," etc.

### *Uses of Foregoing Forms*

A. Disjunctive. Used in answer to question "who?"

B. Objective.

C. Used with aorist tense. Simple form.

D. Used with past tense.

E. Continuous tense, usually present. It entails a special verb construction which is examined under the verb.

F. Used with narrative perfect tense.

G. Used with future (i.).

H. Possessive inseparable, when thing possessed is masculine.

I. Possessive inseparable, when thing possessed is feminine.

J. Possessive separable when thing possessed is masculine.

K. " " " " feminine.

L. Dative.

M. Reduplicated.

*Example of Possessive Pronoun in Combination with Noun*

|                         |        |       |             |          |
|-------------------------|--------|-------|-------------|----------|
| <i>My father</i>        | ubana  | ubana | <i>Plu.</i> | ubanena  |
| <i>Your (m.) father</i> | ubanka | ubaka | ,,          | ubanenka |
| <i>Your (f.) father</i> | ubanki | ubaki | ,,          | ubanenki |
| <i>His father</i>       | ubansa | ubasa | ,,          | ubanensa |
| <i>Her father</i>       | ubanta | ubata | ,,          | ubanenta |
| <i>Our father</i>       | ubanmu | ubamu | ,,          | ubanemu  |
| <i>Your father</i>      | ubanku | ubaku | ,,          | ubanenku |
| <i>Their father</i>     | ubansu | ubasu | ,,          | ubanensu |
| <i>My mother</i>        | uwata  | uwata | ,,          | uwayena  |
| <i>Your (m.) mother</i> | uwalka | uwaka | ,,          | uwayenka |
| <i>Your (f.) mother</i> | uwalki | uwaki | ,,          | uwayenki |
| <i>His mother</i>       | uwalsa | uwasa | ,,          | uwayensa |
| <i>Her mother</i>       | uwalta | uwata | ,,          | uwayenta |
| <i>Our mother</i>       | uwalmu | uwamu | ,,          | uwayemu  |
| <i>Your mother</i>      | uwalku | uwaku | ,,          | uwayenku |
| <i>Their mother</i>     | uwalsu | uwasu | ,,          | uwayensu |

*Notes*

(1) In "uwalka," etc., for "l" with other nouns "r" or "t" may be used for euphony. In these forms "n" is often substituted for "t" or its variants if the possessor is a man. It seems as if there is an objection on the part of a man to apply a feminine form to himself, however correct grammatically. A similar disinclination is observable in other languages, as in French when after "son excellence" "elle" would be strictly correct, but the tendency is to revert to "il" at the first possible opportunity.

(2) Forms without copulative. These are in common use, and are a reversion to the statement of the possessive phase by words in apposition only, as has been discussed

under the noun. Or it may be that both "n" and "t" have been modified for euphony into "r," which after long "a" is scarcely heard.

(3) The possessive pronoun is incorporated in the word, and the accent is thus moved to the new penultimate—as, "ubánmu," "uwása," "ubanénsu."

### *Syntax of Personal Pronouns—Nominative*

1. The pronoun agrees with the subject with which it is in apposition in person, gender, and number—

|                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Yaro ya gani             | <i>The boy sees</i>                |
| Yara ba su gani mutum ba | <i>The boys do not see the man</i> |
| Mache ta tafo            | <i>The woman comes</i>             |
| Mata ba su tafo ba       | <i>The women do not come</i>       |

2. The same rule is observed when there are more than two predicates belonging to the same subject.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Kura ta tafó, ta kawo nama, ta bayés ga dianta, da ita kua ta taba kadán | <i>The hyæna came, she brought meat, she gave it to her offspring, and she too tasted a tittle</i> |
| Namiji ya kama babe, ya darime shi, ya aje                               | <i>The man caught a locust, he tied it up, he laid (it) aside</i>                                  |

3. Two or more nouns in apposition are followed by a pronoun in the plural—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Yaro da ubansa suna zua farauta                   | <i>The boy and his father are going (lit., coming) hunting</i>       |
| Yarinia du uwata, su duka biu, zuchiansu ta bache | <i>The girl and her mother, both of them, their heart was broken</i> |

The omission of the 3rd personal pronoun is very rare except (1) in poetry or proverbs; (2) before "na," *i.e.*, "shina," etc., are shortened to "na"; (3) with the verb "to be," "ke" or "ne"—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Yaro-n-nan ya che bawa-n-sariki ke (or shi ke) da doki | <i>The boy said the chief's slave had the horse</i>       |
| Gama kafirawa kan yerda suabo (poetic)                 | <i>Because the heathen believe in evil (non-religion)</i> |
| Yarona na da mirda-n-chiki, ba shi iya baya-n-gida     | <i>My boy has gripes, he cannot ease himself</i>          |
| Wuyana na yi mini zogi                                 | <i>My neck hurts me</i>                                   |



|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Rashi-n-tuo kan chi wake ak-wana | <i>Having no "tuo" one must eat beans before going to bed ("Tuo" is a sort of porridge of guinea corn—a staple dish.)</i> |
| Wani machiji baki na nan kwanche | <i>A black snake was lying there</i>  |

## Combination of pronouns—

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Mu je da ni | <i>Let us go, you and I</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------------|

*Examples of Syntax of Possessive Pronoun*

## INSEPARABLE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Diarku   | <i>Your (plu.) daughter</i>   |
| Abi-na   | <i>My thing (i.e., my property)</i>   |
| Ya-r-uwamu   | <i>Our sister</i>   |
| Zuchiata ba ta so ba wari-n-rua                        | <i>(lit., my heart) did not like the smell of the water</i>   |
| Mata-r-wanene ke nan? Matata che                       | <i>Whose wife is this? She is mine</i>  |
| Enna abokinka?   | <i>Where is your friend?</i>  |
| Ka zamna ga hanu-n-damana                              | <i>Sit at my right hand</i>   |
| Mugu-n-gatarinka ya fi sare ka bani ( <i>proverb</i> ) | <i>A bad axe is better than an offer to cut (lit., Your bad axe is better than the cutting you give me or will do for me)</i> |
| Garinsu ba da girima ba                                | <i>Their town was not large</i>   |
| Kada ku kafa gida - n - zane - na nan                  | <i>Do not pitch my tent there</i>   |
| Enna matanka?  | <i>Where is your wife?</i>  |

Although "mata" is feminine, "n" is commonly used. The more correct use is "mata-ka" or "mata-r-ka." If the meaning were "Where are your women?" "mata," being the plural of "mache," "n" would be correctly used. As will, however, be seen under prepositions, there is a tendency to use the masculine form "na" and to ignore the feminine.

## SEPARABLE

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya tasa                                      | <i>His sister</i>  |
| Ka bani nawa                                 | <i>Give me my own</i>  |
| Ni baka naka                                 | <i>I shall give you yours</i>                                  |
| Suka che, na wani ne? ta che masu, nasu duka | <i>They said Whose is it? She said to them, For all of you</i> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Mache ta che, yariniata tana da keao, taki ba ta da keao ba  | <i>The woman said, my daughter is beautiful, (but) yours is not beautiful</i> |
| Akwia nan tawa che   | <i>The goat is mine</i>   |
| Gidanga naku ko nasu ne? Ba namu ba ne                       | <i>Is this house yours or theirs? It is ours</i>                              |
| Tamu che   | <i>It is ours (i.e., a thing of feminine gender)</i>                          |
| Kowa ya chi shinkafa-r-ranche tasa ya chi ( <i>proverb</i> ) | <i>Whoever eats borrowed rice it is his own he eats</i>                       |
| Suka tashi da ita da baiwa tata                              | <i>They arose both she and her slave</i>                                      |

Instead of the possessive or genitive case the dative may be found—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Chiawa da ka rena ita ta kan tsokane maka idanu ( <i>proverb</i> ) | <i>The grass you despise may pierce your eyes</i> |
|--|---|

### *Plural Possessive Pronouns*

It has been seen that in the adjective there is no distinction of gender in the plural number. The same applies to the possessive pronouns. Nouns which are feminine in the singular are therefore without gender in the plural.

The following examples illustrate this—

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Mata tasa               | <i>His wife</i>  |
| Mata-n-sa               | <i>His wife and also his wives</i>                                 |
| Dokata                  | <i>My command</i>  |
| Dokokina                | <i>My commands</i>   |
| Kafa tasa               | <i>His leg</i>   |
| Kafafu-n-sa             | <i>His legs</i>  |
| Mata tasa ta bata amre  | <i>His wife spoilt her marriage, i.e., broke her marriage vows</i> |
| Mata-n-sa suka beri shi | <i>His wives left him</i>  |

Other examples of the possessive pronoun, and some of its idiomatic uses, are given under the preposition “na.”

The objective pronoun follows the verb—

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Ya ba ni        | <i>He gave it me</i>                             |
| Ka ba ni dana   | <i>Give me my child</i>                          |
| Na ba ka        | <i>I give (it) you</i>                           |
| Sai ya gani kai | <i>Until he saw you (with emphasis on “you”)</i> |
| Na son kai      | <i>I like you</i>                                |
| Mu kama shi     | <i>We caught him</i>                             |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Muna kama-n-sa                             | <i>We are catching him</i>                             |
| Kura ta bi shi                             | <i>The hyæna followed him</i>                          |
| Kura tana bi-n-sa                          | <i>The hyæna is following him</i>                      |
| Rana duka ina nema-n-sa, ban<br>same sa ba | <i>All day I am seeking him, I do not<br/>find him</i> |

The peculiar construction that follows the verbal pronoun ending in "na" is to be observed. It is more fully examined under the verb, but it may be here mentioned that a noun form of the verb is produced thereby, which requires for its full amplification that a possessive pronoun be added. The above sentences are therefore literally we (are) of-his-catching, or "on" for "of," etc.

The objective pronoun 3rd person singular is often omitted where it can be readily understood from the context, and also in poetry—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Mache ta manehe danta chiki-n-<br>daji; kura ta gani, ta dauka,<br>ta kai, ta boye | <i>The woman forgets her child in the<br/>bush; the hyæna saw (it), took<br/>(it), carried (it), (and) hid (it)</i> |
| Giso ya dauka sanda-sa, ya aje<br>kusa kansa                                       | <i>The spider took his stick, he laid<br/>(it) close to his head</i>  |
| Kawo kori-n-ka, kawo baka-n-<br>ka en ta wada ma (ma=maka)                         | <i>Bring your bows and arrows if such<br/>are your treasured possessions</i>  |

### *Indirect Object for Direct Object in English*

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Ya bada mani=ya ba ni     | <i>He gave me</i>    |
| Su bayes garesa=su ba shi | <i>They gave him</i> |

This is because these forms of the verb, as shown in the chapter on the verb, only admit of an indirect object.

### *Combination of Personal Pronouns*

When two pronouns are combined the first is in the plural number, and they are connected with "da," *and*. With the exception of the connecting link, this idiom is found as far off as the Mende language—

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Gobe mu tafi da kai en gani | <i>To-morrow you and I will go and see</i> |
|-----------------------------|--|

## 2. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Simple form without copulative—

m., f., and plu.      da

,,      with copulative—

masc. and plu.      -n-da,  
fem.                      -r-da

Compound—

|           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| masculine | wanda   |
| feminine  | wadda   |
| plural    | wadanda |

The short and the long forms are commonly interchangeable to suit the euphony or emphasis of a sentence. In the short form the copulative preposition “n,” *of*, may be inserted or omitted, euphony being here also the principal influence—

|                           |    |                                     |
|---------------------------|----|-------------------------------------|
| Mutum wanda shina zua     | or | <i>The man who is coming</i>        |
| Mutume-n-da shina zua     |    |                                     |
| Mache wadda tana zua      | or | <i>The woman who is coming</i>      |
| Mache da tana zua         |    |                                     |
| Mutáne wadanda suna zua   | or | <i>The people who are coming</i>    |
| -Mutané-n-da suna zua     |    |                                     |
| Dóki da ya gudu ya fadi   | or | <i>The horse that ran away fell</i> |
| Dokí-n-da ya gudu ya fadi |    |                                     |

For “abu wanda,” *the thing which*, the abbreviated form is the one in common use—“abinda.”

*Objective Case*

In the objective case a pronoun may or may not follow the verb—

|                               |    |  |
|-------------------------------|----|--|
| Abinda na gani zani fadi      | or | <i>What I have seen I will relate</i>      |
| Abinda na ganishi zani fadi   |    |  |
| Dakinda ankagina ya rushe jia | or | <i>The house which was built collapsed</i> |
| Dakinda ankagina shi ya rushe |    | <i>yesterday</i>                           |
| jia                           |    |  |
| Akwia da ka gani              | or | <i>The goat which you saw</i>              |
| Akwia-r-da                    |    |  |
| ka gani                       |    |  |

*Addition of Personal Pronoun*

When the relative pronoun is used with a noun in the nominative case it is followed by the personal pronoun the same as is the simple noun—

Yaro wanda ya gudu                      *The boy that ran away*

Exceptions are found—

Ita che da ke yin hankali ga      *She it was who was kind to the*  
 bayi                                      *slaves*

*Etymology*

A clue to the etymology of the relative pronouns is furnished by the optional use of the personal pronoun in the objective case in such a sentence as—

Mutum wanda ka nemeshi for      *The man whom you sought*  
 mutum wanda ka nema

In most West African languages the relative pronoun is absolutely non-existent, or at least very poorly indicated, co-ordinate sentences being universally used. If, therefore, from this analogy “da” be no more than the conjunction “and,” Hausa furnishes an example of a language in which the primitive construction is in use side by side with the more advanced which has been developed from it. Accordingly, the above quoted sentence can be translated in the form in which the objective pronoun is used—

Mutum da ka nemeshi              *The man and you seek him*

This is also shown in the following sentence—

Da kaya da mu ke da su              *And the loads which we have*  
 Mashi-n-nan da na soki              *The spear with which I pierced*  
 ubanki da shi                              *your father*

What the “wa” in the longer forms may mean exactly is obscure, but it is the same word as is found in the lengthened forms of the demonstrative pronouns and in the indefinite pronouns. That it has an independent

value is seen from studying the action of the genitive copulative embodied in the words.

In "wa-n-da," the masculine form, "n," i.e., "na," remains unchanged as it must when following words having a masculine meaning.

In "wa-d-da," "wa" seems to acquire a feminine meaning from the word in the feminine gender which it follows. The "n" therefore becomes a modification of "t," as "l" or "r," etc. "Wadda" is therefore derived from "wa-l-da," or "wa-t-da," etc., and the intervening additional consonant has the effect of ensuring that the vowel of "wa" shall be short as it is in "wadda."

In the plural, which is of course the same for both genders, the same peculiar plural termination "da" is found which is also found in the demonstrative pronouns. "Wadanda" is therefore composed of "wa-da (da=plu. suffix) -n-da."

The plural form "wadanda" is contracted in Katsena and Sokoto to "wa'anda," and in Kano and Zaria to "wanda."

### *Further Examples*

#### Nominative relative, long form, dependent—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Fada wanda ba ka iya ba amaisai wasa ( <i>prov.</i> )        | <i>The fight which you find too much for you turn into play</i>       |
| Abubua chan wadanda na ga motsinsu, ko birayi ne ko karnuka? | <i>The things that I see moving yonder, are they monkeys or dogs?</i> |
| Abinda na gani, wanda ya fi anfani sai mu tafi               | <i>In my opinion the best thing for us to do is to go</i>             |

#### Objective relative, long form, dependent—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Abinchi wanda shi ke so                                | <i>The food he likes</i>   |
| Matatai daia wadda ya ke so                            | <i>One of his wives whom he loved</i>                              |
| Ba su kashe mutume nan wanda ya sache doki             | <i>They do not kill the man who stole the horse</i>                |
| Dambaria ya chainye gutsiata wadda ni ke so-n-chi gobe | <i>The mouse has eaten my nuts which I wanted to eat to-morrow</i> |

#### Short form nominative dependent—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Abinda ba naka ba ne, kaka zaka bayes? | <i>The thing that is not yours how can you give it away?</i> |
|--|--|

## Short form, objective, dependent—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Wani gari ne da uwaka zata kaika?            | <i>Where is the town to which your mother is going to take you?</i>    |
| Riga-n-da ka bani ta tsofa                   | <i>The coat which you gave me is old</i>                               |
| Ya tafi gari-n-nan da ya soki sariki ya mutu | <i>He went to that town where he stabbed the chief so that he died</i> |
| Sun goda masa bayinda suka kama              | <i>They showed him the slaves which they had caught</i>                |
| Ba ni da rakuma da zan baka                  | <i>I have no camels to give you</i>                                    |

## Independent form nominative—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Wanda kana yi masa alheri, shi ko, ya kan ki yi - n - godia, butulu ne ( <i>prov.</i> ) | <i>He to whom you do kindness and he refuses to be grateful is a boor</i> |
| Wanda ya sayemu daga Bornu  | <i>He who bought us in Bornu</i>  |

## Independent form objective—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ta basu rua da faraufarau                                   | <i>She gave them water which was very clear</i>  |
| Ina so wanda uwaka ta ba ka ( <i>Sokoto</i> )               | <i>I want that which your mother gave you</i>  |
| Ba ni da wanda uwaka ta baka, sai ina da wanda wana ya bani | <i>I have not that which your mother gave you, I have only that which my elder brother gave me</i> |
| Mata-m-Bornu aikinsu daia ke nan wanda na sani              | <i>As to the women of Bornu there is one kind of work they do which I know</i>                     |

Two co-ordinates sentences may be substituted for the use of the relative—

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Ga jirigi, suanene suna chiki? | <i>See that boat, who are in it? for<br/>Who are in the boat which I see?</i> |
|--------------------------------|---|

## Use of “ mai- ”—

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Mu masuaiki mugunta | <i>We who work iniquity</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|

## 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

The demonstrative pronoun has two forms. One stands before the noun and the syllable “ wa ” enters into its



composition; the other follows the noun and is the same word less the "wa."

|                   | FORM STANDING BEFORE THE NOUN |                             | FORM FOLLOWING |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
|                   | MASC.                         | FEM.                        | MASC.          | FEM.                    |
| <i>This</i>       | wannan                        | wa-nan<br>wa-ga,<br>wa-r-ga | -n-nan, n-ga   | -l-nan, -l-ga,<br>-r-ga |
| <i>These</i>      | wada-n-nan<br>wadanga         | wada-n-nan<br>wadanga       | -n-nan, -nga   | -n-nan, -nga            |
| <i>That</i>       | wa-n-chan                     | wa-chan,<br>wa-r-chan       | -n-chan        | -l-chan,<br>r-chan      |
| <i>Those</i>      | wada-n-chan                   | wada-n-chan                 | -n-chan        | -n-chan                 |
| INDEFINITE PLURAL |                               |                             |                |                         |
|                   | wada                          | wada                        |                |                         |

### *Examples*

|                     |                                   |  |                             |   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>This horse</i>   | wannan doki                       |  | doki-n-nan                  |   |
|                     | wanga doki                        |  | dokinga                     |   |
| <i>This mare</i>    |                                   | wanan<br>godia<br>waga godia                 |                             | godia-l-nan<br>godia-l-ga               |
| <i>These horses</i> | wadannan dawaki<br>wadanga dawaki |  | dawaki-n-nan,<br>dawaki-nga |   |
| <i>These mares</i>  |                                   | wadannan<br>godiyoyi,<br>wadanga<br>godiyoyi |                             | godiyoyi-n-<br>nan,<br>godiyoyi-<br>nga |
| <i>That horse</i>   | wanchan doki                      |  | doki-n-chan<br>doki chan    |   |

### *Other Examples*

|     |                         |      |               |
|-----|-------------------------|------|---------------|
| NAN | Litafi-n-nan, litafinga | CHAN | hainya-r-chan |
|     | Mutane-n-nan            |      | yaro-n-chan   |
|     | Mache-nan               |      |               |
|     | Mutume-n-nan, mutumenga |      | mutume-n-chan |
|     | Kofalga                 |      |               |
|     | Abi-n-nan               |      | abi-n-chan    |
|     | Kasanga                 |      |               |



*Etymology*

“Nan,” “chan,” and “ga” are the equivalents of the adverbs “here” and “there.” That they are not adverbs at all in Hausa may be deduced from their employment. They are in fact nouns, and are treated as such. Hence the copulative “n”; so that literally translated—

|               |             |      |                               |
|---------------|-------------|------|-------------------------------|
| Litafi-n-nan, | litafi-n-ga | mean | <i>the book of this place</i> |
| Litafi-n-chan |             | „    | <i>the book of that place</i> |
| Riga-l-chan   |             | „    | <i>the coat of that place</i> |

The same construction is in “wa-n-nan,” and “wa-n-ga,” though what “wa” may be precisely requires further examination.

As has been explained under nouns, the copulative may be omitted, leaving the two nouns in apposition. Hence the following equivalents are equally correct—

|       |            |                 |                  |
|-------|------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Wanan | for wannan | Litafi nan      | for litafi-n-nan |
| Riga  | chan       | for riga-l-chan |                  |

When it sounds better the copulative is commonly omitted.

The fact that “nan” and “chan” are nouns is further borne out by their uses with predicates.

“Shina nan.” *He is at this place.* Compare “shina gida.” *He is at home.* It is to be noted that whenever a verb has to be placed after the pronoun ending in “na,” the verb becomes a substantive. This is explained under the verb.

That “nan” is not an adverb of place is still further borne out in the phrase “shi ke nan,” *so it is.*

These words “nan” and “chan” are probably in themselves compound words. The parts “na” and “cha” represent present and distant position. “N” is a formative suffix of some kind. It may be connected with the locative suffix of Kanuri, also “n,” or it may be the preposition “n,” *of*, with a somewhat different usage. That the final “n” is variable and separable is borne out by one example “miji-nal-mata” in a poem called “Mutane zina” (footnote given in Charlton’s “Hausa Reading Book”).

From the foregoing it can be seen that any change for gender depends on the copulative alone, but in the long forms "wanga," "wa-ga," or "wa-r-ga" it is not quite apparent why there should be any change, as the gender of the copulative depends upon the unchanged preceding syllable or word "wa."

### *Remarks on Usages, etc.*

The longer are naturally more emphatic than the shorter. "Nga" is a dialectic variation of "nan."

"Wanga," "waga" are Sokoto and Zanzara forms.

"Wainen" (masc.) and "wai'en" (fem.) are Katsina forms of "Wannan," etc., to which place they are rather strictly confined.

"Wankai" is a Zaria form for "wanchan," without inflection for gender used by the "talakawa Zaria."

### *Examples of Syntax*

|                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Wannan mutum talaka ne | <i>This man is poor</i>     |
| Ki koiya mani waka nan | <i>Teach me that song</i>   |
| Yaronga shina yin fada | <i>That boy is fighting</i> |

Whilst "chan" expresses strongly distance "nan" is commonly indefinite.

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Dokinga naka ba na iya sayinsa    | <i>This horse of yours I cannot buy it</i>         |
| Ba na so-n-chi-n-tuo-n-nan        | <i>I cannot eat that food</i>                      |
| Masu-kaya biunga su sake kanyansu | <i>These two carriers have changed their loads</i> |

In the translation of the Lord's Prayer "nan" is given an emphatic use, as, "Ka ba mu rananga abinchi-n-yao da gobe." *Give us this day our daily bread.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Mu wadanan uku anhaife mu ga<br>gari daia                      | <i>We three were born at the same place</i>                           |
| Da ya tashi dawuri wadanan<br>masudawaki da ba su tarsheshi ba | <i>Had he started early the horsemen would not have overtaken him</i> |

(In the last sentence "wadanan" is essentially weak.)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Abubua nan  | <i>These things</i>  |
| Yaranga suna yi-n-fada  | <i>Those boys are fighting</i>   |
| Ya rasulu allahi deddi fadi shi<br>ke wada suka kada maulana— | <i>O prophet! it was God's saying of<br/>old that those who despised the<br/>master—</i> |
| Mu gani kaka aboki nan newa<br>en ya zo ya ji tsoro           | <i>We see how this* my friend if he<br/>comes will be afraid</i>                         |
| Kurdi kadan nan ne  | <i>This money is not enough (is small)</i>   |
| Na baka dia nan tawa  | <i>I give you this my daughter</i>   |

In many of its usages the demonstrative “nan” has very little demonstrating power as regards place. It is more easily translated by the definite article in English.

In this way some compensation is made for an apparent deficiency in the Hausa language. In Kanuri it is also found that a weakened demonstrative does duty for a definite article.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Mutume-n-nan da ya manche<br>sandansa ya dawoyo           | <i>The man who forgot his stick has<br/>come back</i> |
| Ta dauki hazi nan   | <i>She took the millet</i>                            |
| Labaringa ke nan (Sokoto)                                 | <i>This is the news</i>                               |
| Labarin ke nan (Kano and Zaria)                           |   |
| Abinnan yana wurina                                       | <i>The thing is with me</i>                           |
| Amma Bitrus ya tashi tsaye<br>tare da goma sha daia-n-nan | <i>But Peter stood up with the eleven</i>             |

### Correlatives

“Wannan . . . wannan” and “-nan . . . -nan”; are equivalent to “this . . . that”—

Ka so wannan litafi ko wannan? *Do you like this book or that?*

Wannan and nan for wannan . . . wannan

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Wannan ba nan ba ni ke so          | <i>This not that I want</i>      |
| Wannan mutum ba nan ba ni<br>ke so | <i>I want this man, not that</i> |

### Other Examples

|   |  |
|---|--|
| En wannan ba ya yi maka dadi<br>ba, halama wanchan ya yi                          | <i>If this does not please you, perhaps<br/>that will</i>  |
| Zabua nan ta yi kwoi goma sha<br>uku har ta dena, wachan ma<br>tana nema-n-guribi | <i>This guinea fowl laid thirteen eggs<br/>and has ceased; that one how-<br/>ever is seeking a place to lay in</i> |

Wannan can be used independently as a noun—

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Wannan ya kare                | <i>This has finished</i>                    |
| Wannan ba na so shi ba        | <i>This (man) I do not like him</i>         |
| Wannan ne wayo da na baki     | <i>This is the advice which I give you</i>  |
| Wannan barao ne               | <i>This is a thief</i>                      |
| Wannan namiji ba mache ne     | <i>This is a male not a female</i>          |
| Wanene wannan a kofa-r-dakina | <i>Who is that at the door of my house?</i> |

#### FINAL "N"

It may here be noticed that a final "n" is sometimes added to nouns, especially at the end of a phrase or sentence. It is not a firmly expressed "n," and is somewhat nasal. It is possibly primarily euphonic, but it commonly has the effect of expressing emphasis, and so puts the noun into the definite state, or, in other words, it has the effect of the definite article. Its use is optional.

This final "n" was not recognised by the older writers on Hausa, possibly because it is more commonly used in the centres of the Hausa country to which they had not access, and because it is more apparent in writing than in speaking.

As it is a detail of the language that has received much discussion of late, it may be here stated that a not dissimilar use of "n" is found in at least one other West African language. In far distant Temne, for instance, "ng" occurs at the end of some pronouns and adverbs to make a convenient termination when they are used at the end of a preposition or absolutely. Also as an extension of this use it expresses emphasis. It is, however, quite distinct from the article which is a prefix in that language. If, therefore, this use of "n" exists in one other language besides Hausa, there will undoubtedly be found other languages which have a similar practice.

This "n" in Hausa is not to be confused with the preposition "of." The latter is often written at the end of a noun when in reality it is connected with the noun that follows. Writing it attached to the first of two nouns is merely a convention. It must, however,

be added that in some instances it is hard to say whether the “n” is really the preposition or the special “n” here referred to—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Uban ya che da keao                       | <i>The father said, all right</i>                                  |
| Ya che da uban                            | <i>He said to the (or his) father</i>                              |
| Ya fita a garin                           | <i>He left the town</i>  |
| Daga bayan Musa ya yi yaki                | <i>After this (or behind them) Musa made war</i>                   |
| Ban sami maganin ba                       | <i>I did not find the medicine</i>                                 |
| Duka garin ba mache maikeao kama tata     | <i>In the whole town there was no woman as beautiful as she</i>    |
| Ya tafo ga wurin enda machiji shi ke      | <i>He went to the place where the snake was</i>                    |
| Ya che da matan kun gama aiki-n-abinchin? | <i>He said to the women, have you finished preparing the food?</i> |
| Mutumen ya che da sariki                  | <i>The man said to the chief</i>                                   |

*With Words other than Nouns*

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Domin ta hanbare ka ga addini       | <i>That it may kick you away from religion</i>     |
| Ku yi abinchi “iri-iri” kamin en zo | <i>Make ready every kind of food before I come</i> |

Examples of the absence of final “n” are numerous in this grammar.

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

The following pronouns are used in asking questions :—

*Independent Forms*

|                   | SINGULAR               |                           | PLURAL |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------|------------------------------|
|                   | MASC                   | FEM.                      | MASC.  | FEM                          |
| <i>Who, which</i> | wa,<br>wanc,<br>wanene | wa,<br>wache,<br>wacheche |        | suwa,<br>suwanc,<br>suwanenc |
| <i>What</i>       | mi,<br>mine,<br>minenc |                           |        |                              |

*Attached Forms*

|              |      |       |        |
|--------------|------|-------|--------|
| <i>Which</i> | wanc | wache | wadanc |
|--------------|------|-------|--------|

*Etymology.*—The longer forms are made up with the masculine and feminine forms of the verb “to be” suffixed

to "wa" and duplicated in the longest forms for emphasis.

*Plural.*—The plural of the independent forms is made by the personal pronoun "su," *they*, prefixed to the stem "wa." This use of "they" to form the plural of nouns, etc., is found in other languages in West Africa, and is discussed in the chapters on the plural and the pronoun in "The Languages of West Africa."

*Independent Forms.*—When used independently before a verb they require the 3rd personal pronoun as if they were nouns. Where the latter is omitted the reasons are the same as those given for the nouns under personal pronouns.

### *Examples of Syntax*

#### (MASCULINE FORMS)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Wa ke chan ? or Wane ke chan ?             | <i>Who is there ?</i>  |
| Wa ka ke ? or Wane ka ke ?                 | <i>Who are you ?</i>   |
| Kai wanene ?                               | <i>Who are you ?</i>   |
| Wa ya yi wannan ?                          | <i>Who has done this ?</i>   |
| Wane ya yi wannan ?                        | <i>Who has done this ?</i>   |
| Mutume-n-nan, wanene ?                     | <i>Who is this man ?</i>   |
| En ji wa                                   | <i>Let me hear who ! i.e., who says so ? This is in answer to the summons, "wai ka zo," you are told to come</i> |
| Wanene wannan ?                            | <i>Who is this ?</i>   |
| Wanene chiki-n-su ?                        | <i>Which of them ?</i>   |
| Wanene (or wane) shina iya saiyensa ?      | <i>Who can buy it ?</i>  |
| Chiki-n-ku wa ke zua farauta da ni ?       | <i>Which of you is coming hunting with me ?</i>  |
| Wa ya fada maka labari nan ?               | <i>Who has told you this news ?</i>  |
| Wane maikiddi ?                            | <i>Who is the drummer ?</i>  |
| Wa je shiga rijia ?                        | <i>Who will enter the water-hole ?</i>   |
| Dan wanene                                 | <i>Son of "who-is-it" ; son of so-and-so</i>   |
| Wa ke da litafi-n-sariki ?                 | <i>Who has the chief's book ?</i>  |
| Wanene na ku duka ya chainye - nama duka ? | <i>Which of you has eaten all the meat ?</i>   |

It will be noticed from the foregoing examples that the different forms "wa," "wane," and "wanene" are largely used to suit the euphony of the sentence.



The following are all equally correct—

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Wa ya che maka haka ?     | } <i>Who said so to you ?</i> |
| Wane ya che maka haka ?   |                               |
| Wanene ya che maka haka ? |                               |

Of these the first and the third are said to be the commonest except in Zaria.

The difference between them depends on no more than the pleonastic insertion of the verb "to be," which can also be done in English, as, *Who said so to you, or, Who is it that said so to you ?*

### *Idiomatic Use of "wane"*

"Wane" = *who is it*, may be used as a substantive in the sense of "so-and-so"; as—

Enna wane ?

*Where is so-and-so ? This is literally Where is "who-is-it" ? the name not being known.*

The corresponding word to "wane" in respect to things is "kaza"—

Na bashi abu kaza  
Muka yi kaza da kaza

*I give him such-and-such a thing  
We did thus and thus*

### *Independent Forms, Feminine*

Wache che chan ?  
Wache ta yi wannan ?  
Wache chiki-n-su ?  
Mache nan, wache che ?  
Wacheche mache tafari ?

*Who is there ?  
Who has done this ?  
Which of them ?  
Who is this woman ?  
Who was the first woman ?*

### *Independent Forms, Plural*

|                 |            |                            |                                    |
|-----------------|------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Suwa ke chan ?  | suwane ke  | <i>Who are there ?</i>     | The latter is the more harmonious. |
| Suwancnc ?      |            | <i>Who are they ?</i>      |                                    |
| Wadanan mutanc, | suwancnc ? | <i>Who are these men ?</i> |                                    |

The following is an irregular usage—

Wane mutane ke nan ? *Who are these men*  
(NOTE.—Miller writes "woni.")

*Independent Form applied to Things*

## NO GENDER AND NO PLURAL

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Mi ya fadi? Mine ya fadi?   | <i>What did he say?</i>                   |
| Minene ya fadi?             | <i>What is it he said?</i>                |
| Kana yi-n-mine?             | <i>What are you doing?</i>                |
| Minene wannan?              | <i>What is this?</i>                      |
| Mine ya sa ka zo?           | <i>What has made you come?</i>            |
| Minene shina chi tumaki-na? | <i>What is it that destroys my sheep?</i> |
| Mine da Englil?             | <i>What is it in English?</i>             |
| Fada mani minene su?        | <i>Tell me what they are?</i>             |
| Mi ya faru?                 | <i>What has happened?</i>                 |
| Mi zani yi yao?             | <i>What shall I do to-day?</i>            |
| Minene wani abin-nan?       | <i>What is that other thing?</i>          |
| Gudu-n-mi ki ke yi?         | <i>What are you running away for?</i>     |
| Kuka-n-mi ku ke yi          | <i>What are you shouting for?</i>         |

*Forms coupled with the Noun—Masculine Singular*

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Wane mutum ya gudu?                  | <i>Which man has run away?</i>   |
| Wane yaro shi ke da hima?            | <i>Which is the diligent boy? lit.,<br/>Which boy he is with diligence</i> |
| Wane launi tsuntsu shi ke da shi?    | <i>What colour is the bird?</i>  |
| Wane lokachi ya zo?                  | <i>What time did he come? or<br/>When . . . ?</i>                          |
| Wane mutum ke nan wanda akakama jia? | <i>Who is the man that was caught yesterday?</i>                           |
| Wane iri-n-hali garesa?              | <i>What sort of character has he?</i>                                      |
| Wane lokachi ne yanzu?               | <i>What is the time now?</i>   |

Here "wane" is masculine to agree with "hali." If a feminine word is substituted for "hali," "wane" takes the feminine form.

An exception as to agreement occurs with the word "iri," *kind*, in the phrase "what kind of." To all intents and purposes its existence is ignored as to gender, and it is treated as part of the interrogative pronoun itself —

|                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| Wane iri-n-mutum?   | <i>What kind of man?</i>   |
| Wache iri-n-mache?  | <i>What kind of woman?</i> |
| Wadane iri-n-mutane | <i>What kind of men?</i>   |



*Forms coupled with the Noun—Feminine Singular*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Wache yarinia ta ke da hima ?                 | <i>Which girl is diligent ?</i>                                   |
| Wache hainya ya tafi ?                        | <i>Which road has he gone ?</i>                                   |
| Wache mache che wanan wadda ta zo ?           | <i>What woman is this that comes ?</i>                            |
| Wache iri-n-fitila ke nan ?                   | <i>What sort of lamp is this ?</i>                                |
| Mutum maidukia, wache iri-n-riga shi kan sa ? | <i>As regards a rich man, what kind of dress does he put on ?</i> |

*Form joined to the Noun, Plural*

|                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Wadane mutane ke nan ?    | <i>What men are these ?</i>        |
| or—                       |                                    |
| Wadanan mutane, suanene ? | <i>What men are these ?</i>        |
| Wadane mata suna kuka ?   | <i>Which women are screaming ?</i> |

*Possessive Interrogative Pronoun*

This is formed by putting “na,” of, before the interrogative pronoun.

If standing alone the longer forms are used — “na-wane ?” “na-wanene ?” “na-wache ?” etc.

If accompanied by a noun the short form is commonly used, “n-wa” following the noun.

If the object possessed is feminine the preposition “n” becomes “l,” etc., as with nouns.

In the plural, “-n-wa” is found, of course, irrespective of gender—

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Na-wanene ya bache ?            | <i>Whose is lost ?</i>                   |
| Doki-n-wanene ke nan ? or       | <i>Whose horse is this ?</i>             |
| Doki-n-nan na wanene ?          |  |
| Doki-n-wa ke nan ?              |  |
| Dia-r-wachehe ki ke ?           | <i>Whose daughter are you ?</i>          |
| Dia-l-wa ki ke ?                | ”  |
| Dia-t-wa ki ke ?                | ”  |
| Yaya-n-wa sunka yi worigi nan ? | <i>Whose children have played here ?</i> |
| Mata-n-wa ta kawa gishiri ?     | <i>Whose wife was turned into salt ?</i> |

Ban sani ba na wanene  
Tumaki-n-wa ke nan ?

*I do not know whose  
Whose sheep are these ?*

### *Interrogative 1st Personal Pronoun*

The 1st personal pronoun has a special interrogative form. It is chiefly used in answer to a question.

|                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Nia ?              | <i>Is it I ?</i>             |
| Nia na fada maka ? | <i>Is it I who said so ?</i> |
| Nia che ?          | <i>Is it I ! (fem.)</i>      |

## 5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

|  | SINGULAR                      |                                 | PLURAL                  |
|--|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
|  | MASC.                         | FEM.                            | BOTH GENDERS            |
| <i>Someone, something, a certain person or thing. Used adjectivally and pronominally</i> | wani                          | wata                            | wadansu,<br>wansu, wasu |
| <i>Another</i>   | wani                          | wata                            | wadansu                 |
| <i>Any one, every one, each one. Used as a pronoun</i>                                   | kowa,<br>kowanc,<br>kowanene  | kowa,<br>kowache,<br>kowacheche |                         |
| <i>Any, every. Used as an adjective, and it precedes the noun</i>                        | kowane                        | kowache                         |                         |
| <i>Anything, everything whatsoever it be, whatsoever</i>                                 | komi,<br>kominine<br>kominene |                                 |                         |

It will be noticed that the indefinite pronouns which are composed with the particle "ko" have the same forms as the interrogative pronouns—

|                                |                                       |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>So-and-so</i>               | wā ne                                 |
| <i>Such and such a thing</i>   | kaza                                  |
| <i>The one . . . the other</i> | wani . . . wani wata . . . wata       |
| <i>Some . . . others</i>       | wasu . . . wasu wadansu . . . wadansu |
| <i>No one</i>                  | ba kowa, babu kowa                    |
| <i>No one who</i>              | ba wanda, babu wanda                  |
| <i>Nothing</i>                 | ba komi, babu komi                    |

“Kowane” is combined with the plurals of the personal pronouns—

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| Kowane-n-mu | <i>each of us</i>   |
| Kowane-n-ku | <i>each of you</i>  |
| Kowane-n-su | <i>each of them</i> |

## FEMININE

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| Kowache-n-mu | <i>each of us</i>   |
| Kowache-n-ku | <i>each of you</i>  |
| Kowache-n-su | <i>each of them</i> |

In the same way that the particle “ko” is prefixed to the interrogative pronouns to form the indefinite pronouns, it may further be prefixed to certain adverbs taking away their interrogative force and substituting an indefinite or distributive idea—

|          |              |          |                                       |
|----------|--------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| Enna ?   | <i>where</i> | Koenna   | <i>anywhere, everywhere, wherever</i> |
| Yaushe ? | <i>when</i>  | Koyaushe | <i>at any time, always, whenever</i>  |
| Yanzu    | <i>now</i>   | Koyanzu  | <i>even now, immediately</i>          |
| Kaka ?   | <i>how ?</i> | Kokaka   | <i>anyhow however</i>                 |

It is to be noted that attached to “yanzu” which has not an interrogative force, “ko” has a different force also.

*Gender and Number*

Gender and number are but secondary considerations in the indefinite pronouns, especially when used as substantives.

*Kowa, etc., pronominal*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Kowa ya sani sarki   | <i>Every one knows the chief</i>  |
| Akoi kowa chiki-n-daki ?   | <i>Is there any one in the house ?</i>  |
| Kowa ya gane shi   | <i>Somebody has seen him</i>  |
| Kowa ya zo nan gobe, en yi<br>masa keauta                        | <i>Any one who comes here to-morrow,<br/>I will give him a present</i>          |
| Kada ka fadi ga kowa, kadan na<br>ji ka fadi ga wani ina buganka | <i>Do not tell any one, if I hear you<br/>have told any one I will beat you</i> |
| Kowa ba shi gane shi ba  | <i>No one has seen him</i>  |
| Babu kowa chan   | <i>There is no one there</i>  |
| Ba kowansu (Sokoto)  | <i>Not one of them</i>  |
| Ba kowa achikinsu (Zaria)  |   |
| Kowane ya tafi hainya dabam                                      | <i>Each one went a different road</i>   |
| Kowane-n-mu  | <i>Each of us</i>   |
| Kowache ta tafi hainyanta  | <i>Each woman went her way</i>  |
| Kowane da zaya zo nan gobe en<br>yi masa keauta                  | <i>Whoever comes here to-morrow I<br/>will give him a present</i>               |

*Kowane*, etc., adjectival

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Kowane yaro ya tafi hainya<br>dabam    | <i>Each boy went a different road</i>             |
| Kowache yarinia ta tafi hain-<br>yanta | <i>Each girl went her road</i>                    |
| Kowache safia anadada muna<br>albarka  | <i>Each morning blessings are added<br/>to us</i> |

*Examples of Syntax**Wani*, etc., adjectivally

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Wani mutum ya yi karia                                   | <i>Some man has lied</i>   |
| Wata mache ta yi karia                                   | <i>Some woman has lied</i>   |
| Wasu mutane sun yi karia                                 | <i>Some men have lied</i>  |
| Mu rubuta magana - n - wani<br>mutum da na ji daga Bornu | <i>Let us write the story of a man,<br/>which I heard in Bornu</i>                 |
| Ban tafi wani wuri ba                                    | <i>I did not go anywhere</i>   |
| Doki-n-wani mutum ya mutu                                | <i>Some one's horse is dead</i>  |
| Nan garin dai, ba wani mai-<br>saida zuma sai wane       | <i>Here in this town, indeed, there was<br/>no one sold honey except so-and-so</i> |

*Wani*, pronominally

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Masallachi nan, akwai wani<br>achiki? Aa, ba kowa | <i>That mosque, is there any one in-<br/>side? No, no one</i> |
| Ni koiya ga wadansu                               | <i>I shall teach others</i>                                   |
| Wani ya tafo daga Hadija                          | <i>Some one has come from Hadija</i>                          |

*Wani*=another, others adjectivally

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Babu wani sarki dunia | <i>There is no other king in the world</i> |
| Wata rana             | <i>Another day</i>                         |

*Wani*, another, pronominally

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Naka ba ya fi na wani ba | <i>Yours is not heavier than any other's</i> |
| Ni koiya ga wadansu      | <i>I shall teach others</i>                  |

Use of *wani* in singular for plural (Sokoto)

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Wani mutane ya tafi gari-n-<br>Bauchi tari tari | <i>Some people went to the country<br/>of Bauchi in large numbers</i> |
|---|---|

*Komi*, etc.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Akoi komi chiki-n-rami?                | <i>Is there anything in the hole?</i>                  |
| Ya fadi komi amma ban ji ba            | <i>He said something but I did not<br/>hear</i>        |
| Komine ta roko Allah, Allah<br>ya bata | <i>Whatever it was she asked God,<br/>God gave her</i> |
| Komi da ka bani ni ke so               | <i>Whatever you give me I like it</i>                  |
| Komi ka yi na so                       | <i>Whatever you do I like it</i>                       |

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Abinda ka ke yi duka . . .          | <i>Whatever you do . . .</i>                  |
| Babu komi chiki-n-rami              | <i>Nothing in the hole</i>                    |
| Ba shi fadi komi ba                 | <i>He said nothing</i>                        |
| Ba shi yi maki komi                 | <i>He will do you no harm</i>                 |
| Sarikin Kano ya fada masu babu komi | <i>The chief of Kano said nothing to them</i> |
| Ba su che ba komi                   | <i>They did not say anything</i>              |
| Ba ya beri komi sai gasusuka        | <i>He left nothing but the feathers</i>       |

*Wa-ne*

This is literally "Who is it?"

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Enna wane?                     | <i>Where is what's his name?</i>   |
| Ya che, daga gari sarakin wane | <i>He said—(I come from) the country of King Somebody. ("King" is in plural)</i> |

*Wani . . . wani, etc.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Wani farke ya tafi Kano, wani ya tafi Sokoto       | <i>One trader goes to Kano, one to Sokoto</i>  |
| Wata mache ta yi daria, wata ta yi kuka            | <i>One woman laughed, the other cried</i>      |
| Wadansu suna chi-n-nama, wadansu ba su chi ba      | <i>Some eat meat, others do not eat it</i>     |
| Wadansu mutane suna kiwo rakuma, wadansu suna noma | <i>Some mind camels, others work the farms</i> |

*Sundry Negative Idioms (see also under Adverbs)*

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ba abinda babu                   | <i>There is nothing short</i> |
| Babu daiansu. Babu daia chikinsu | <i>Not one of them</i>        |

*Ba wanda for ba kowa*

"Wanda," the relative pronoun, is made use of instead of "kowa" in negative sentences. Such short sentences as "Ba kowa chan," etc., are exceptions. With a dependent sentence "ba wanda" is used.

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ba wanda zaya yi shi sai ni | <i>No one shall do it but me</i> |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|

Here "ba kowa" would be quite incorrect.

"Ba kowa" may be translated by "nobody," but "ba wanda ya" = "there is no one who." In the latter phrase in both English and Hausa there is a relative idea instead of two co-ordinate sentences—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Babu wanda ya san' shi                                 | <i>There was no one knew him</i>                                     |
| Abinda fadawa sun fadi ba wanda shi ke da iko shi sake | <i>What the king's council orders no one has the power to change</i> |

## 6. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The reflexive pronoun is formed with the aid of the noun "kai," *head*.

|        |                 |                      |
|--------|-----------------|----------------------|
| Kaina  |                 | <i>myself</i>        |
| Kainka | <i>or kanka</i> | <i>yourself (m.)</i> |
| Kainki | <i>or kanki</i> | <i>yourself (f.)</i> |
| Kainsa | <i>or kansa</i> | <i>himself</i>       |
| Kainta | <i>or kanta</i> | <i>herself</i>       |
| Kainmu | <i>or kanmu</i> | <i>ourselves</i>     |
| Kainku | <i>or kanku</i> | <i>yourselves</i>    |
| Kainsu | <i>or kansu</i> | <i>themselves</i>    |

*Examples of Syntax*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| So kainka, wani ya kika; ki<br>kainka wani ya soka  | <i>Love yourself, others will hate you;<br/>hate yourself, others will love you</i> |
| Ba ya kula da kainsa ba, ya sa<br>kainsa ( <i>or ya maida hanka-</i><br><i>linsa</i> ) garin cheton wadansu | <i>He cared not for himself but he set<br/>himself to save others</i>               |
| Ya bata kansa   | <i>He destroyed himself</i>   |
| Ta gamu da kuda suna dafa<br>kansu  | <i>She met some flies who were cook-<br/>ing for themselves (story)</i>             |

## 7. EMPHATIC PRONOUN

These are, similarly to the reflexive pronouns, formed with "kai," *head*, with the addition of the preposition "da," *with*—

|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| Ni dakaina                                     | <i>I myself</i>          |
| Kai dakainka <i>or kai dakanka</i>             | <i>you yourself (m.)</i> |
| Ke dakainki <i>or ke dakanki</i>               | <i>you yourself (f.)</i> |
| Shi dakainsa <i>or shi dakansa</i>             | <i>he himself</i>        |
| Ita dakainta <i>or ita dakanta</i>             | <i>she herself</i>       |
| Mu dakaimu <i>or mu dakainmu or mu dakanmu</i> | <i>we ourselves</i>      |
| Ku dakainku <i>or ku dakanku</i>               | <i>you yourselves</i>    |
| Su dakainsu <i>or su dakansu</i>               | <i>they themselves</i>   |

The objective forms of the foregoing only differ in the 2nd singular and 3rd feminine singular, which are "ka dakainka," "ki dakainki," "ta dakainta."

In syntax the personal pronoun follows the foregoing when it is the subject of the verb—

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Ni dakaina na tafi                    | <i>I myself go</i>   |
| Ke dakainki ki ke da laifi            | <i>You yourself are to blame</i>                           |
| Ko ni dakaina sai ina tafia ga kafata | <i>Even I myself travelled on foot</i>                     |
| Su dakansu ba su so su sha-rua nan    | <i>They themselves did not like to drink of that water</i> |

“Kadai,” *only, alone*, is also used with the personal pronoun. Possibly “kadai” is derived from “kai,” *head*, and “daia,” *one*—

|           |                       |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| Ni kadai  | <i>I alone</i>        |
| Kai kadai | <i>you alone (m.)</i> |
| Ke kadai  | <i>you alone (f.)</i> |
| Shi kadai | <i>he alone</i>       |
| Ita kadai | <i>she alone</i>      |
| Mu kadai  | <i>we alone</i>       |
| Ku kadai  | <i>you alone</i>      |
| Su kadai  | <i>they alone</i>     |

## 8. RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

There is only one reciprocal pronoun, “juna.”

It is unchanged for gender or number.

With the past tenses “juna” often stands alone at the end of the sentence, but with present and future tenses it is joined with the personal pronouns plural by “n” or by “da,” sometimes also by “ga.”

### “Juna” alone

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Sun fada juna                         | <i>They spoke together</i>                                  |
| Sabada girinansu ba su iya wucho juna | <i>They cannot pass each other on account of their size</i> |

### With “n”

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Ba su so juna-n-su ba    | <i>They do not love each other</i>        |
| Muna yi-n-fada juna-n-mu | <i>We are fighting amongst ourselves</i>  |
| Zaku yi-n-fada juna-n-su | <i>They will fight amongst themselves</i> |

With "da"

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Mun yi murna da juna         | <i>We rejoiced with one another</i>    |
| Zaku yi-n-fada da juna       | <i>You will fight with one another</i> |
| Muna soyeya da juna-mu, gama | <i>We are at fellowship with each</i>  |
| kowa yana ba abokinsa gaskia | <i>other because each trusts his</i>   |
|                              | <i>friend</i>                          |

With "ga"

|                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Suna raba kurdi ga junansu | <i>They divide the money among</i> |
|                            | <i>themselves</i>                  |



CHAPTER V  
THE VERB

*PART I*

DERIVATION

There are in Hausa primitive and derived verbs.

The origin of the former cannot be ascertained from the language itself. Amongst them are such verbs as "chi," *eat*; "sha," *drink*; "ji," *hear*.

Derived verbs are formed in a variety of ways. It is always by the addition of a suffix, either with or without some modification of the stem, never by means of a prefix.

*Class 1*

An indeterminate root receives a final vowel expressing rest, or motion to, or motion from, as—

Dauki, *take up*; dauko, *take up and give me*; dauka, *take up and take away*.

Kawo, *carry to me*; kai, *carry or carry away*.

*Class 2*

Suffix "ta" to form verbs from nouns, as—

Tsorata, *to frighten one*, from "tsoro," *fear*.

*Class 3*

Reduplication to form frequentative or intensitive verbs, as—

Buge-buge, from “buga,” *strike*.

Or by part reduplication, as—

Raraba, *scatter*, from “raba,” *divide*.

*Class 4*

To an indeterminate root “che” or “ta” is added, the former having rather present and future meanings, and being frequently intransitive, and the latter having a past meaning and a transitive sense, as—

Manche and manta, *to forget*.

*Class 5*

Certain primitive verbs take a number of suffixes. There is practically little or no change of meaning attached, but they have special uses, and may change the verb from a transitive one to an intransitive one, and *vice versa*. As each form can be conjugated, they can be treated as separate verbs as much as are the verbs in Class 1.

The suffixes in question are: “-da,” “-shi,” “-yes,” “-s,” “-sda,” as—

Ba, bada, bashi, bayes, bayesda, *to give*.  
Zuba, zubaş, zubaşda, *to pour*.

*Class 6*

“Nye” may be added together with some slight modification of the vowel of the root. It is an intensitive particle.

Chi, *to eat*; chainye, *to devour*.

*Class 7*

A noun is seldom used as a verb, but many verbs in English can only be translated into Hausa

by the use of a noun with "yi," *make*, or "ji," *hear*, *feel*.

Yi girima, *to grow*, lit., *make greatness*.

Ji dadi, *to be pleased*, lit., *feel happiness or sweetness*.

*Class 8*

Some derived verbs are nouns without change of form, but it is always doubtful whether to assume that the verb is derived from a noun or that the noun is derived from a verb—

Mari, *a blow or to strike*.  
So, *love or to love*.

Tashi, *rising or to rise*.

*Class 9*

To some verbs, but not all, the termination "-a" may be added, the stem being unchanged. A sort of present participial form is so produced, but though this form may be translated as a verb in English it is in reality a noun, and has, accordingly, been treated as such. See under derived nouns, Class 8.

This termination may be written as "wa" after "a," "e," "o," "u," and "ya" after "i."

*Derived Verbs—Class 1*

The terminal vowels are modified to indicate change of meaning.

"A" = motion from the speaker. The accent is on the last syllable.

"O" = motion to the speaker. The accent is on the last syllable.

"I," "e," or "u" = indicate rest or uncertain direction, but they are also interchanged for euphony.

Not by any means all verbs in the Hausa language admit of these change of vowels. A knowledge of those that do can only be acquired by practice.

This use of the termination "u" must not be confused

with the passive form, which will be explained in its proper place.

When the pronoun has the termination "na" it is generally found that the verb ends in "a" also. (See under this tense in chapter on verb.)

The following are examples of the foregoing changes applied to a certain number of verbs—

*Buga, strike*

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Ya bugi yaro                  | <i>He struck the boy</i>                |
| Bugi yaro!                    | <i>Hit the boy!</i>                     |
| Ya buge shi                   | <i>He beat him</i>                      |
| Na buge duchi                 | <i>I struck a stone</i>                 |
| Buga shi!                     | <i>Beat him!</i>                        |
| Na buga kafata ga duchi       | <i>I struck my foot against a stone</i> |
| Ina bugu-n-yaro               | <i>I am beating the boy</i>             |
| Ina bugu-n-sa (or bugu-n-shi) | <i>I am beating him</i>                 |
| Buga kofa!                    | <i>Knock at the door</i>                |

The termination "o" does not seem to occur with this verb. In all the examples of "buga" given above it is seen that the sense of direction scarcely applies. It must therefore be assumed that the variations are all for euphony, which will be apparent if an attempt be made to use the wrong vowel.

*Dauka, take*

|                       |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Dauki!                | <i>Take it!</i>                     |
| Dauki riga!           | <i>Take the cloth</i>               |
| Na dauke ta           | <i>I took it</i>                    |
| Dauka ta!             | <i>Take it!</i>                     |
| Ya dauka kaya         | <i>He took up the load</i>          |
| Zani dauka-l-riga     | <i>I am going to take the cloth</i> |
| Dauko!                | <i>Take and bring it here</i>       |
| Dauko shi!            | <i>Take it down</i>                 |
| Ya dauke shi          | <i>He took it up</i>                |
| Dauke su!             | <i>Take them away!</i>              |
| Ku dauki kaya         | <i>Take up your loads</i>           |
| Dauki sabuni mai-issa | <i>Take enough soap</i>             |

*Same*

|              |                              |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| Ya sami riga | <i>He received the cloth</i> |
| Sami riga    | <i>Accept the cloth</i>      |
| Na same shi  | <i>I have received it</i>    |

|                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Sama ta !      | <i>Accept it !</i>               |
| Na samu doki   | <i>I have received the horse</i> |
| Na samu mutane | <i>I found the men</i>           |

("Hainya ta samu," *there is a road, or the road is found, or now exists.*  
This is the passive verbal form, and has no connection with the scale of vowels indicating direction, etc.)

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Mi ya sama ka                                   | <i>What is the matter with you</i> |
| Komi ya sama se                                 | <i>Whatever befalls him</i>        |
| Ba ya samu ya shiga                             | <i>He could not enter</i>          |
| Ya samu wata guda                               | <i>He spent one month</i>          |
| Na samu rongomi, na samu<br>dama, na samu sanki | <i>I feel better</i>               |

## Kama

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na kame doki                              | <i>I caught the horse</i>                              |
| Na kama yaro a bisa doki                  | <i>I caught the boy on the horse</i>                   |
| Kama !                                    | <i>Catch it and go !</i>                               |
| Kamo !                                    | <i>Catch it and come !</i>                             |
| Ya kama hainya                            | <i>He took his road</i>                                |
| Ba ni kama                                | <i>I would not believe (it)</i>                        |
| Ya kamu kif                               | <i>He caught the fish</i>                              |
| Kifaye nawa munka kamo ?                  | <i>How many fish have we caught ?</i>                  |
| Daga gari nan kishirua ta kamo<br>inutane | <i>In that land thirst seized the people</i>           |
| Ku mayes mamu rakumamu da<br>kuka kamu    | <i>Return to us the camels that you<br/>have taken</i> |

## Damre

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Na damre kaya                        | <i>I tie the load</i>  |
| Na damra fitila a bisa kaya          | <i>I tie the lamp on the load</i>                              |
| Adamra siliyu dama hauni<br>(poetic) | <i>Chains shall be bound on their<br/>right and left hands</i> |
| Andamre kaya duka ?                  | <i>Are all the loads tied up ?</i>                             |

## Komo

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Komo !   | <i>Come back !</i>   |
| Koma !   | <i>Go back !</i>   |
| Ya koma daki-n-sa                                | <i>He has returned to his house</i>  |
| Ya komo dakina                                   | <i>He has come back to my house</i>  |
| Tun ba akoma ba                                  | <i>Until there is no return</i>  |
| En mu komo mu futa rana daia,<br>kana mu tafi su | <i>When we come back we will rest<br/>one day, then we will go fishing</i> |

"Komo," "koma," being radically verbs of motion, it is not possible for them to take the terminations "i," "e,"

or "u"; and the same applies to other verbs which cannot be dissociated from any idea of motion:—

*Dawoyo*

Dawoyo!  
Dawoya!

*Return here!*  
*Return there!*

*Gudu*

Gudu!  
Gudo!  
Kadda ka gudu!

*Run (away)!*  
*Run to me!*  
*Do not not run away!*

*Fita*

Ya fita da shi  
Rana ta fita  
Ya fita nagari  
Fito!  
Enda rana ta ke fitowa

*He went off with it*  
*The sun has risen*  
*He has turned out well*  
*Come out!*  
*Where the sun comes out from*

*Nema, seek*

Bawana ya tafi nema-n-yaro,  
ba ya same shi ba, kai ka tafi  
ka nemo shi  
Suka che ku nemo masa maehe

*My slave has gone to look for the  
boy. He has not found him.*  
*Do you go and look for him*  
*They said find a wife for him*

*Aiki, send*

Na aiki wani Kano  
Na aiko wani nan  
Ya aikoni  
Ya aikini  
Sariki ya aiko agaishe ka

*I have sent some one to Kano*  
*I sent some one here*  
*He sent me here*  
*He sent me there*  
*The chief has sent to salute you*

*Koiya, teach    Koiyo, learn*

Allah shi koiya muna hainyansa    *May God teach us His way*

*Fada, tell*

Ya fada mani  
Ya fadi gaskia  
Muna fadi, ba mu boiye ba  
Kun ji fa, mun fadi . . .

*He told me*  
*He spoke the truth*  
*We tell you, we do not hide it*  
*Do you listen, we say . . .*

*Fadi, fada, fall*

Ya fado daga bisa doki

*He fell off the horse*

*Saye, to buy, sell, barter*

Sayo

*Sell to me*

*Wanke, wash*

Wanko

*Wash and bring it back*

*Rubutu, write*

Ya che ya iya rubutu, ya rubuta *He said he could write ; he wrote*

The following are some other verbs that admit of these changes—

|            |       |       |                 |
|------------|-------|-------|-----------------|
| Aje (azhe) | azha  |       | <i>put</i>      |
| Beri       |       | bero  | <i>leave</i>    |
|            | fesa  | feso  | <i>spit</i>     |
|            | issa  | isso  | <i>reach</i>    |
|            | jefa  | jefo  | <i>throw</i>    |
|            | gama  | gamo  | <i>meet</i>     |
| Karbi      | karba | karbo | <i>receive</i>  |
| Rufe       | rufa  |       | <i>cover</i>    |
|            | sapka | sapko | <i>alight</i>   |
|            | shiga | shigo | <i>enter</i>    |
| Tafi       |       | tafo  | <i>go, come</i> |
| Ture       | tura  |       | <i>thrust</i>   |

Some verbs appear in longer forms owing to the final vowel not being changed—

|          |               |        |                      |
|----------|---------------|--------|----------------------|
| Bi       |               | biyo   | <i>follow</i>        |
|          | ja            | jawo   | <i>draw, towards</i> |
| Kai      |               | kawo   | <i>carry, bring</i>  |
| Kiraye   | kira          | kirawo | <i>call</i>          |
| Je (zhe) | za-(-pronoun) | zo     | <i>go, come</i>      |

### *Derived Verbs—Class 2*

Suffix “ta” to nouns. These verbs are few in number—

|           |                               |      |         |                     |
|-----------|-------------------------------|------|---------|---------------------|
| Tsorata   | <i>to frighten one</i>        | from | tsoro   | <i>fear</i>         |
| Taurata   | <i>to harden oneself</i>      | „    | tauri   | <i>hardness</i>     |
| Shaworata | <i>to hold a consultation</i> | „    | shawora | <i>consultation</i> |

*Derived Verbs, Class 3*

Reduplication to form intensitive or frequentative verbs. Either the whole verb is repeated, or more commonly only the first syllable—

|                              |  |      |         |  |
|------------------------------|--|------|---------|--|
| Buge-buge,<br>bubuga, bubugi | <i>to beat much</i>                          | from | buga    | <i>to strike</i>   |
| Chainye-chainye              | <i>to be gluttonous</i>                      | „    | chainye | <i>to devour</i>   |
| Chichika                     | <i>to fill up</i>                            | „    | chika   | <i>to fill</i>   |
| Fakake                       | <i>to grope for</i>                          | „    | ? fake  | <i>to hide</i>   |
| Gushe-gushe,<br>gurgusa      | <i>gush out frequently<br/>or abundantly</i> | „    | gusa    | <i>to gush</i>   |
| Sansanche                    | <i>explain much, under-<br/>stand much</i>   | „    | sani    | <i>to know</i>   |
| Tsatsaga                     | <i>tear to pieces</i>                        | „    | tsaga   | <i>tear</i>  |
| Tatara                       | <i>pick up or out</i>                        | „    | tara    | <i>to gather</i>   |
| Zazaga                       | <i>to shake up, walk<br/>about</i>           | „    | ? zaga  | <i>to shake,<br/>walk back-<br/>wards and<br/>forwards</i> |
| Sosoke                       | <i>to pierce with many<br/>holes</i>         | „    | soke    | <i>to pierce,<br/>prick</i>                                |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ya bubugi yara                                    | <i>He beat the boys well</i>                                    |
| Mutane suka bubuge ta ta mutu                     | <i>The men beat her till she died</i>                           |
| Munka soso ubane-n-mu                             | <i>We have loved our fathers</i>                                |
| Zasu rurubuta takardu                             | <i>They are going to write letters</i>                          |
| Ku kakashe raguna                                 | <i>Kill sheep</i>   |
| Ya kakashe su duka                                | <i>He exterminated them</i>                                     |
| Kaddadai ajita yi sagara mai-<br>kirkira (poetic) | <i>Let her not be heard calling fowls<br/>with a loud voice</i> |
| Ku dadauka abinchi                                | <i>Each one of you take some food</i>                           |
| Ina so-n-gagaida mainya                           | <i>I wish to salute each of the elders</i>                      |
| Suna gagani-n-mutane                              | <i>They see men</i>   |
| Shashafesu da tsuma                               | <i>Wipe each of them with a rag</i>                             |

It is to be noted that whenever there is a reduplicated form of the verb and the noun is in the plural, the noun usually has an indefinite sense.

*Derived Verbs. Class 4*

In this class are verbs which may end either in “che” or “ta,” these terminations being added to the root which has no separate existence as a word. The meaning in



either case is the same in English, but their uses are slightly different.

The following are some verbs of this nature—

|          |         |                                     |
|----------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| Manche   | manta   | <i>forget</i>                       |
| Bache    | bata    | <i>destroy, lose</i>                |
| Kwanche  | kwanta  | <i>lie or lay down to sleep</i>     |
| Jiche    | jita    | <i>turn upside down</i>             |
| Jirkiche | jirkita |                                     |
| Lalache  | lalata  | (1) <i>be "idle"; (2) perish</i>    |
| Rubuchi  | rubuta  | <i>write</i>                        |
| Rikiche  | rikita  | (1) <i>be confused; (2) confuse</i> |

The form ending in "che" is more commonly intransitive.

This form is used for preference with present and future meanings. The form in "ta" has for preference a transitive and a past meaning.

Because a verb ends in "che" it does not invariably follow that there is a form in "ta."

It is further to be noted that the "ta" form can never be used as a substantive. The "che" form is commonly used as such, however, as "lalachi," *idleness*.

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Na jiche koria                    | <i>I turn the calabash upside down</i>         |
| Na jita koria a bisa-n-ta         | <i>I turned a calabash upside down over it</i> |
| Na rubuchi litafi                 | <i>I write a book</i>                          |
| Na rubuta suna-n-sa a bisa litafi | <i>I wrote his name upon the book</i>          |
| Kada ka manta                     | <i>Do not forget</i>                           |
| Abi-n-nan ya bache mani           | <i>I have lost this thing</i>                  |
| Su bache tare                     | <i>They perish together</i>                    |
| Malika ya batansu                 | <i>The angel shall afflict them</i>            |
| Ya bata hainya                    | <i>He lost the way</i>                         |

### Derived Verbs. Class 5

To the terminations, "-da," "-shi," "-s," "-yes," "-yesda" it is not possible to assign any precise meaning in English.

The effect of their addition to the primitive verb is to make it transitive, intransitive, causative, or by making the word itself longer to supply suitable words to make a statement more formal or dignified.

All forms can be conjugated.

Their effect upon the primitive verb can be best seen from illustrations.

*Da*.—This may be the preposition “with.” In any case that rendering will satisfy the majority of instances of its use quite clearly—

|      |                |       |                               |
|------|----------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| Ba   | <i>give</i>    | Bada  | <i>give up</i>                |
| Sayi | <i>barter</i>  | Saida | <i>barter with=sell</i>       |
| Tara | <i>collect</i> | Tarda | <i>come up with, overtake</i> |

In monosyllabic verbs ending in “i,” “da” is sharpened to “ta,” as—

|                 |                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Ku yita aiki    | <i>Get on with your work</i> |
| Bitu hainya nan | <i>Go by this road</i>       |

See further examples under “yi” in chapter xii.

*Yes* gives an intransitive force—

Bayes *give up*

If “da” is added to “yes” a transitive force is resumed.

Na bayes *I give up*                      Na bayesdashi *I give it up*

*S* gives intransitive force.

*Shi* gives a transitive force to an intransitive primitive verb, but is added to transitive verbs without change of meaning. It takes a pronoun only as direct object, not a noun.

### Examples

*Ba*, give. Transitive

|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Ya bani kurdi | <i>He gave me the money</i> |
| Ya bashi ita  | <i>He gave her to him</i>   |

NOTE.—“*Ba*” is only followed by the recipient as a second direct object if the latter is a pronoun. If a noun “*bada*” is used. The relative position of the two objects is changeable.

“*Bada*” always requires a preposition before the indirect object.

|                         |                                  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ya bada kurdi ga mutane | <i>He gave money to the men</i>  |
| Na bada kurdi ga kai    | <i>I gave the money to you</i>   |
| Na bada ita gare shi    | <i>I gave her to him</i>         |
| Na bada shi ga kai      | <i>I gave him (or it) to you</i> |

Other phrases :—

|            |                       |             |                 |
|------------|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Bada daria | <i>cause to laugh</i> | bada girima | <i>honour</i>   |
| Bada tsoro | <i>inspire fear</i>   | bada hainya | <i>make way</i> |
| Bada laifi | <i>condemn</i>        | bada gaskia | <i>justify</i>  |

Also—

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Hainya ta badamu zua gari | <i>The road led us to the town</i>       |
| Muka bada fuska ga garimu | <i>We turned our face to our country</i> |

*Examples of other forms of "ba"*

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Na bashe shi ga kai            | <i>I give it to you</i>                     |
| Ya bayes (or bayas)            | <i>He gave (it) up</i>                      |
| Na bayesda shi                 | <i>I gave it up</i>                         |
| Sariki ya che ka bashi abinsa. | <i>The chief says you must give him</i>     |
| To, na bayes                   | <i>his property. All right, I will</i>      |
|                                | <i>give (it)</i>                            |
| Ba ka bashi tufafinsa ba ? Na  | <i>Have you not given him his clothes ?</i> |
| bayes or na bayesda su         | <i>I have given them</i>                    |
| Ka bayes ga mutume chana       | <i>Give it to the man there</i>             |
| Za-abashieni sabada bashi      | <i>I shall be given on account of a</i>     |
|                                | <i>debt</i>                                 |

*Saiya, barter, etc.*

Various forms : "saida," "saishe," "sayes" ("sayas," "sayar," "sayer"), "sayesda" ("sayarda," "sayerda"). Before a pronoun "saiya" is usually found as "saiye." "Saiyo" is *to buy and bring back*.

The forms "saida," "sayesda" (or "sayerda") are always transitive.

"Saiyes" ("saiyar") is intransitive. The other forms may be both. "Saishe" is only used before a personal pronoun.

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Ina so en saye rakumi, enna    | <i>I want to buy a camel. Where are</i>    |
| akesamunsa ?                   | <i>they to be found</i>                    |
| Masu - rakumi suna chiki - n - | <i>The owners of the camels are in the</i> |
| kasua, suna saye da sayerua    | <i>market. They buy and sell</i>           |
| Na saida rago ga shi           | <i>I sold the ram to him</i>               |
| Na saida shi ga shi            | <i>I sold it to him</i>                    |
| Ya saishe shi                  | <i>He sold it</i>                          |
| Ya saida ita                   | <i>He sold her</i>                         |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya sayes (sayas)   | <i>He sold (it)</i>   |
| Ka sayes—abinda ba ka iya so   | <i>Sell (it)—whatever you may not want</i>  |
| Da Kelowi sun saida ni   | <i>They sold me to the Kelowi</i>   |
| Sun saye ni wuri-n-wani mutum  | <i>They sold me to a certain man</i>  |
| Sun sayes ni ga Salah bin Omer   | <i>They sold me to Salah bin Omer</i>   |
| Ina so ka kai zane-n-nan wuri-n-dilali, shi saida shi. Idan ya sayer ka karbi kurdi ka sayo mani rago, ka kawo saura-n-kurdi | <i>I want you to take this cloth to the broker to sell. When he has sold it take the money and buy for me a ram. Bring back the rest of the money</i> |
| Doki-n-nan na sayerua ne? Aa, ansayesda shi jia  | <i>Is this horse for sale? No, it was sold yesterday</i>  |
| Ka tafi ga wani ka saiyo   | <i>Go to some one else and buy</i>  |
| Nawa nawa akesayesda su?   | <i>How much each?</i>   |
| Nawa anasayesda su?  | <i>How much are they (in a lump)?</i>   |
| Suna sayesua dukiansu  | <i>They are selling their goods</i>   |
| Abubua duka ambayes gareni   | <i>All things are delivered unto me</i>   |

NOTE.—“*r*” is found as a phonetic variation for “*s*,” but “*s*” is always employed at the end of a sentence.

*Bata*, to lose, spoil

|                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ya bata da kurdinsa        | <i>He lost his money</i>             |
| Ya bata da shi             | <i>He lost him or it</i>             |
| Ya batashe shi             | <i>He lost him (or it)</i>           |
| Ya batas                   | <i>He lost (it)</i>                  |
| Shi yaro ne, shina batasua | <i>He is a boy and will spoil it</i> |

*Bache*, to be spoiled

The various forms of “*bata*” are used for this verb, which in itself admits of no variations—

|                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Abi-n-nan ya bache mani | <i>I have lost the thing</i>   |
| Yaro ya bache mata      | <i>The boy was lost to her</i> |

*Fita*, to take out, go out

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya fita da mutum   | <i>He pulled the man out</i>                       |
| Ya fita da shi   | <i>He freed him</i>                                |
| Ya fishe ni  | <i>He released me or pulled me out</i>             |
| Ya fitas   | <i>He pulled (him) out</i>                         |
| Na fishe ka  | <i>I dismiss you</i>                               |
| Ya fitasda riga-sa   | <i>He took off his coat</i>                        |
| Shi fishe mu aiki mutane zina (poetic)   | <i>He separates us from the work of adulterers</i> |
| Su sa fitasua kurkono. (“ <i>Fitasua</i> ” is “ <i>fitas</i> ” with the termination “ <i>ua</i> ”) | <i>They made the guinea worm come out</i>          |

*Tashi, to rise*

Other forms—"Tada," "tashe," "tayes," "tayesda," "taso."

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Saidai shi tada haba yi jaki<br>berbera (poetic) | <i>He would merely lift up his chin<br/>and bray like an ass</i> |
| Na tada manzo                                    | <i>I sent a messenger</i>  |
| Ka tasheni da sasafe                             | <i>Wake me very early</i>  |
| En na tashe yaranku kua zo                       | <i>If I raise up your children, will<br/>you come?</i>           |
| Hadari ya taso masu a chikin<br>daji             | <i>The storm descended on them in<br/>the forest</i>             |

*Chi, eat*

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Ki chi nama!          | <i>Eat meat ("you" is feminine)</i>      |
| Na chishe shi         | <i>I gave him to eat, I fed him</i>      |
| Ya chida doki da dawa | <i>He fed the horse with guinea corn</i> |
| Ya chida shi da dawa  | <i>He fed him with corn</i>              |
| Ya chiyes             | <i>He has fed, or eaten (it)</i>         |

*Jefa, throw*

|                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| Na jefáda abu  | <i>I threw a thing</i> |
| Na jefáda shi  | <i>I threw it</i>      |
| Na jcfashé shi | <i>I threw it</i>      |
| Na jefas       | <i>I threw</i>         |

Other forms—"jefshi," "jefasda," "jefda" = "jefada"; also found as "shepta" and "shebda."

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ajefo har takardu-n-aiku namu<br>(poetic) | <i>We shall be placed according to the<br/>list of our deeds</i> |
|---|--|

*Yas or yes, to throw away*

|                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Na yada shi (yada=ya-r-da=<br>yasda) | <i>I threw it away</i>         |
| Na yashe shi                         | <i>I threw it away</i>         |
| Ya yas                               | <i>He threw (it) away</i>      |
| Ta yada zane                         | <i>She threw off her cloth</i> |

*Tara, assemble*

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Ya tara mutane  | <i>He collected the men</i> |
| Ya tarasu       | <i>He collected them</i>    |
| Suka tara gari  | <i>They are of one town</i> |
| Uwa muka tara   | <i>We have one mother</i>   |
| Ya tarda mutane | <i>He assembled the men</i> |
| Ya tara da su   | <i>He collected them</i>    |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ya tarshe su  | <i>He assembled them</i>  |
| Ya tarda chiwuta                                    | <i>He will contract a disease (poetic)</i>                              |
| Na tarda shi  | <i>I overtook him</i>   |
| Ya taras  | <i>He collected (them)</i>  |
| Ka tarshi mu ji dadi (poetic)                       | <i>Help us to feel happy</i>  |
| Kadadai ka tara hanuka don<br>tsoro-n-beri (poetic) | <i>Although you put both your hands<br/>to it for fear of losing it</i> |

*Tsaya, stand*

## Other forms—tsai, tsayi, tsaishie, tsaisa

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na tsaya daidai                                     | <i>I stand upright</i>                                   |
| Ya tsaya  | <i>It is finished</i>                                    |
| Ni na tsaya ga litafi nan                           | <i>I hit upon this book</i>                              |
| Malaiiku su tsaida zugazuganta<br>(poetic)          | <i>The angels will lift up the bellows</i>               |
| Da ya fara chewa sun tsaisa sa                      | <i>When he began to speak they<br/>stopped him</i>       |
| Na tsaitse shi                                      | <i>I got before him</i>                                  |
| Kowane zashi tsayesda wannan<br>mutum zaakasshe shi | <i>Whoever shall detain this man shall<br/>be killed</i> |
| Sun sani mi ya tsaishie ni haka                     | <i>They knew what delayed me so</i>                      |

*Kawo, bring*

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Kauda (=kawo da) take away, abrogate;<br>kawas, kaushi | Kawasda, remove,<br>disperse; |
|--|-------------------------------|

*Chira, save*

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Ya chiráda mutum daga rua | <i>He saved the man from the water</i> |
| Ya chiráda ni daga rua    | <i>He saved me from the water</i>      |
| Ya chirashé shi           | <i>He saved him</i>                    |
| Ya chirás                 | <i>He saved (him)</i>                  |

*Zuba, pour*

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Ya zubáda rua | <i>He poured the water out</i>             |
| Ya zubáda shi | <i>He poured it out</i>                    |
| Ya zubshé shi | <i>He poured it out</i>                    |
| Ya zubás      | <i>He poured (it) out or It gushed out</i> |
| Zubásda mia   | <i>To expectorate violently</i>            |

## Also—

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Amsa, amsashi                        | <i>answer</i>   |
| Bi, bishe                            | <i>follow</i>   |
| Mu roke ta'ala shi bishemu<br>hainya | <i>We beseech the Exalted One to<br/>direct our steps</i> |
| Cheta, chetas                        | <i>save</i>   |
| Issa, ishe, iyes, iyesda             | <i>reach</i>  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Gaji, gasda, gashi                     | <i>weary</i>   |
| Gama, gamshe                           | <i>fit, please, meet</i>   |
| Gaya, gaida, gaishe                    | <i>salut</i>   |
| Kawo, kauda, kawasda, kawas,<br>kaushi | <i>carry</i>   |
| Kada, kayes                            | <i>condemn</i>   |
| Koshi, kosda, koshada                  | <i>satisfy</i>   |
| Kwanche, kwanta, kwantas               | <i>lie down</i>  |
| Koiya, koiyas                          | <i>teach</i>   |
| Kada su koiyas chikin sunan<br>Isa     | <i>That they should not teach again in<br/>the name of Jesus</i> |
| Lasa, lasda, lashe                     | <i>lick</i>  |
| Murda, murshi                          | <i>twist</i>   |
| Sani, sanasda, sanda, sanaswa          | <i>know</i>  |
| Shida, shishi                          | <i>descend</i>   |
| Zamna, samshi                          | <i>sit, set down</i>   |
| Ku samshisu kasa hamsinham-<br>sin     | <i>Make them sit down in fifties</i>                             |
| Wohalla, wohalshi, wohalda             | <i>trouble</i>   |

*Derived Verbs.—Class 6*

The intensitive particle “nye” is added to some slight variation of the stem of a primitive verb—

|      |              |          |                                |
|------|--------------|----------|--------------------------------|
| Sha  | <i>drink</i> | shainye  | <i>swallow greedily</i>        |
| Chi  | <i>eat</i>   | chainye, | <i>devour (as wild beasts)</i> |
| Taya | <i>help</i>  | tainye   | <i>help</i>                    |

*Derived Verbs—Class 7*

Many nouns which have not a related verb form can only be used as predicates with the aid of the verb “yi,” *to do*, or “ji,” *to hear*. They can only take an indirect object—

|                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| Muka yi zanche | <i>We conversed</i> |
| Yi girima      | <i>To grow</i>      |

Further examples of the use of “yi” are given under idiomatic expressions.

In Sokoto, Zanfara, and Katsina “wo” is commonly used for “yi,” as “wo takarda,” *send a letter*, “wo yaki,” *wage war*.



*Use of "ji"*

The verb "ji" is combined with substantives or adjectives similarly to "yi," and must be equally regarded as a form-word—"Ji tsoro," *to be afraid*; "ji haushi," *be angry*; "ji kumia," *feel pity*; "ji dadi," *be pleased*.

The object which is indirect is expressed by adding the possessive pronoun to the noun—

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ba ka ji tausayi mu                | <i>You felt no pity for us</i>                         |
| Ba na ji-n-dadi-n-hawanki,<br>kura | <i>I do not feel comfortable riding you,<br/>hyæna</i> |
| Ka ji dadi-n-hawana ?              | <i>Do you like riding me ?</i>                         |

*Derived Verbs—Class 8*

Nouns and verbs of same form—

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Ya fadi masu                       | <i>He said to them</i>                              |
| Da ya kare fadi-n-sa               | <i>When he had finished his speech</i>              |
| Dunia ta lalachi                   | <i>The world perishes</i>                           |
| Lalachi                            | <i>Idleness</i>                                     |
| Ba magana !                        | <i>Do not talk !</i>                                |
| Don Allah ya badamu so-n-<br>kwana | <i>Because God has given us a love of<br/>sleep</i> |
| Tambaye-n-nan da ka ke yi          | <i>The question you ask (make)</i>                  |
| Kana yi-n-magana Hausa ?           | <i>Do you speak Hausa ?</i>                         |
| Koiya na Shaitan                   | <i>The teaching of Satan</i>                        |
| Su dora kira                       | <i>They raise a cry</i>                             |
| Ya kira shi                        | <i>He called him</i>                                |
| Suna magana banza                  | <i>They talk nonsense</i>                           |

## PART II

## DIVISION OF VERBS

Verbs are of two kinds—transitive and intransitive.

The transitive verb requires an object.

The intransitive verb denotes a state, feeling, or action which terminates in the doer or agent.

Some verbs in Hausa are (1) only transitive; others



(2) only intransitive ; (3) some, primarily one or the other, may be used in the opposite sense without any change of form ; and (4) yet others by taking an addition to the stem can be recognised as transitive alone or intransitive alone.

This last feature is not found in the English language, where there is in general nothing in the look or appearance of a verb, unless its intransitive counterpart is known (*e.g.*, raise, rise ; set, sit), which renders it possible to tell whether it is transitive or intransitive.

Causative verbs are, of course, all transitive.

The following are examples of the different kinds of transitive and intransitive verbs :—

(1) *Verbs only Transitive*

Gani, *to see* ; ji, *to hear* ; kawo, *to bring*

(2) *Verbs only Intransitive*

Zo, *come* ; tafi, *go* ; zamna, *sit down*

(3) *Verbs both Transitive and Intransitive in Meaning*

Kiwo, *tend a flock, graze, feed*  
 Boye, *hide, hide oneself, be hid*  
 Chika, *fill, be full*

(4) *Verbs whose Form Indicate whether Transitive or Intransitive*

*Transitive*

Verbs formed from nouns with suffix “ta” (*see class 2 of derived verbs*) ; also verbs ending with “ta” which have corresponding intransitive forms ending in “che.”

The termination “shi” (*see derived verbs, class 5*) ; also the termination “yesda.”

*Intransitive*

The termination “che” usually ; also the termination “yes” ; also verbs ending in “u” which are formed from transitive verbs by the change of the final vowel. Many of the latter are usually found only in the 3rd person singular, and so a middle voice may be said to be produced.

The suffix "wa" may be added to this form (*see* examples under present participle).

This intransitive ending—"u"—must be carefully distinguished from the termination "u," which many transitive verbs take, without ceasing to be transitive, either for euphony or to indicate absence or neutrality of direction. These are discussed in class 1, Derived Verbs.

*Some Intransitive Verbs in "u"*

|                                     |      |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Budu, <i>to be open</i>             | from | bude, <i>to open</i>             |
| Bugu, <i>to be beaten</i>           | „    | buga, <i>to beat</i>             |
| Dadu, <i>to be increased</i>        | „    | dade, <i>lengthen</i>            |
| Dafu, <i>to be cooked</i>           | „    | dafe, <i>to cook</i>             |
| Damru, <i>to be bound</i>           | „    | damre, <i>to bind</i>            |
| Faru, <i>to happen</i>              | „    | fara, <i>to begin</i>            |
| Fasu, <i>to be broken</i>           | „    | fashe, <i>to break</i>           |
| Furu, <i>to be burning</i>          | „    | fura, <i>to kindle</i>           |
| Godu, <i>to appear</i>              | „    | goda, <i>to show</i>             |
| Gamu, <i>to meet</i>                | „    | gama, <i>to join</i>             |
| Haifu, <i>to be delivered</i>       | „    | haife, <i>to beget</i>           |
| Kafu, <i>to be fastened</i>         | „    | kafa, <i>to fasten</i>           |
| Karu, <i>to be added</i>            | „    | kara, <i>to add</i>              |
| Kasu, <i>to be slain</i>            | „    | kashe, <i>to kill</i>            |
| Kuntu, <i>to be loosened</i>        | „    | kunche, <i>to untie</i>          |
| Matsu, <i>to be narrow</i>          | „    | matse, <i>to squeeze</i>         |
| Mutu, <i>to die</i>                 |      |                                  |
| Nadu, <i>to be rolled up</i>        | „    | nade, <i>to coil</i>             |
| Niku, <i>to be ground</i>           | „    | nika, <i>to grind</i>            |
| Rabu, <i>to depart</i>              | „    | raba, <i>to divide</i>           |
| Ragu, <i>to be decreasing</i>       | „    | rage, <i>to lessen</i>           |
| Retu, <i>to be swinging</i>         | „    | reto, <i>to shake to and fro</i> |
| Rufu, <i>to be shut</i>             | „    | rufe, <i>to shut</i>             |
| Sanu, <i>to be known</i>            | „    | sani, <i>to know</i>             |
| Shimfudu, <i>to be spread</i>       | „    | shimfude, <i>to spread</i>       |
| Taru, <i>to be assembled</i>        | „    | tara, <i>to collect</i>          |
| Wazu, wasu, <i>to be dispersed</i>  | „    | wasa, <i>to disperse</i>         |
| Yiwu, yiu, <i>to be done</i>        | „    | yi, <i>to do</i>                 |
| Zubu, subu, <i>to be gushed out</i> | „    | zuba, <i>to pour</i>             |

This form is used in a reflexive sense, and also follows the same verb in the passive voice for emphasis—

|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Mutum ya bugu | <i>The man is beaten</i>    |
| Dundu ya dafu | <i>The yam is cooked</i>    |
| Kofa ta budu  | <i>The door stands open</i> |
| Kofa ta rufu  | <i>The door is shut</i>     |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Tukunia ta fasu                              | <i>The pot is broken, has broken itself</i>                |
| Jirigi ya rahu                               | <i>The boat is split</i>                                   |
| Ka tara mutane da zasu yi-<br>aiki. Sun taru | <i>Collect the men to work. They are collected</i>         |
| Ta ga wata akwia ta haifu                    | <i>She saw a certain goat which had just brought forth</i> |

*For Emphasis*

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Adamre shi, shi damru | <i>Let it be tied so that it is tied fast or tie it tight</i> |
| Abugashi shi bugu     | <i>Let him be well beaten</i>                                 |
| Ayishi, shi yiwu      | <i>Let it be done well</i>                                    |

## PART III

## AUXILIARY VERBS

There are three forms of the verb "to be."

They have gender.

They refer to present and past time, but not to future.

They are—

|                |          |             |
|----------------|----------|-------------|
| Ke (m. and f.) | Che (f.) | Ne (common) |
|----------------|----------|-------------|

For the future the verb "zama," *to become*, is used.

There is no auxiliary "have," nor is "have" a possessive verb. The place of the latter is taken by the preposition "da," *with*.

The following is the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs—

|              |                |   |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| ni ne        | ni ke          | The negative forms are the same with "ba . . . ba." |
| kai ne       | ka ke          |   |
| ke che (f.)  | ki ke (f.)     |   |
| shi ne       | shi, ya, yi ke |   |
| ita che (f.) | ta ke (f.)     |   |
| mu ne        | mu ke          |   |
| ku ne        | ku ke          |   |
| su ne        | su ke          |   |

*"Ke"*

"Ke" is used both as an auxiliary to form one of the present tense forms of other verbs, and also as a

substantive verb. In the latter capacity it usually requires the complement to precede it—

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Da ka ke or Kai, da ka ke     | <i>You are a free man</i>               |
| Sania ta ke                   | <i>It is a cow</i>                      |
| Dana ke nan                   | <i>This is my son</i>                   |
| Shi dana shi ke               | <i>He is my son</i>                     |
| Enna ku ke ?                  | <i>Where are you ?</i>                  |
| Shi ke nan                    | <i>So it is</i>                         |
| Ba da ka ke ba                | <i>You are not a free man</i>           |
| Jia ni ke nan ni daia         | <i>Yesterday I was here alone</i>       |
| Yarinia da ka gani ita ke nan | <i>The girl you see it is she</i>       |
| Ka tafi ke nan har abada      | <i>You are leaving in fact for ever</i> |

### Ne

This form is usually enclitic. If a pronoun is added it may follow in its capacity of complement, but if the person is the 3rd singular, it is commonly omitted—

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Ni ne                                 | <i>It is I</i>                                |
| Da ne ni                              | <i>I am a free man</i>                        |
| Da ne kai                             | <i>You are a free man</i>                     |
| Kai ne sariki ? Ni sariki ne          | <i>Are you the chief ? I am the chief</i>     |
| Yaro ne or, less commonly Yaro ne shi | <i>It is a boy</i>                            |
| Kai dansa ne                          | <i>You are his son or Are you his son ?</i>   |
| Kano dā gari karami ne.               | <i>Kano was formerly a small town</i>         |
| Ni danfari ne, su ne na baya          | <i>I am the first born, they are after me</i> |

In the following examples “ne” becomes enclitic to a whole sentence—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Gurubi-n-ido ba ido ba ne (prov.)        | <i>A substitute for the eye is not the eye</i> |
| Allah shi ne ya ba ni                    | <i>It was God gave it to me</i>                |
| Wani mutum maihalbi ne shina da mache    | <i>A certain hunter had a wife</i>             |
| Ba zaka kai ni wurin malamin nan ba ne ! | <i>Will you not take me to this mallam ?</i>   |
| Mu kuma duka shaidu ne ga wannan         | <i>We also are all witnesses of this</i>       |

Compare the following—

|                    |                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Allah shi ne abada | <i>God is eternity (or for ever)</i> |
| Allah shina koenna | <i>God is everywhere</i>             |

*Che*

This feminine form may be substituted for "ne," but not for "ke"—

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Dia che ni                            | <i>I am a free woman</i>                             |
| Dia che ki                            | <i>You are a free woman</i>                          |
| Sania che ita or sania che            | <i>It is a cow</i>                                   |
| Ba dia che ni ba                      | <i>I am not a free woman</i>                         |
| Ita mache che                         | <i>It is a woman</i>                                 |
| Ni, fa, ba akwia che ba, mache che ni | <i>As for me, I am not a goat, I am a woman</i>      |
| Kama da wani ba wani ba che (prov.)   | <i>Likeness to another it is not the same person</i> |

(The noun phrase "ba wani ba," i.e., *not another*, ends in "a," and so is treated as feminine, probably by a very pedantic mallam).

"Ni che" is not found, but only "ni ne" of whichever gender. In "Dia che ni" the feminine form is used after "dia," "ni" being treated as a complement.

*Emphasis on the Pronoun*

If emphasis is required on the pronoun, it is placed at the beginning of the sentence—

|                |                           |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| Shi dana ne    | <i>He is my son</i>       |
| Ita diyata che | <i>She is my daughter</i> |

*Idiomatic Uses of "ne"*

"Ne" is sometimes added almost pleonastically to the end of an answering sentence for emphasis.

In answer to such a question as "What do you want?" one hears—

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Na zo wurinka ne | <i>I have come to see you (lit., I have come to your place, it is)</i> |
|------------------|--|

Also—

|            |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|
| Na sani ne | <i>I know of course</i> |
|------------|-------------------------|

Some of the examples given under "ne" above also exemplify this.

“Ne,” preceded by the pronoun, sometimes stands before the main sentence for the same purpose—

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Shi ne, shi ke shakka azaba-n-lakhira | <i>He it is, he doubts the pains of hell</i> |
| Shi ne, na fada maka                  | <i>It is as I told you</i>                   |
| Shi ne, uba na yara goma              | <i>He it is, the father of ten boys</i>      |

### *Omission of Pronoun*

The 3rd personal pronoun singular is sometimes omitted with “ne.” This is common in negative sentences—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Sariki ne da doki for Sariki shi ne da doki | <i>The chief has the horse</i>                   |
| Banza fari-n-ido babu gani (prov.)          | <i>A bright eye that cannot see is worthless</i> |

Also omitted with “ke”—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Enna ke yi maka zogi?                           | <i>Where is the pain?</i>  |
| Yao da gobe ke sa gini-n-rijia da alura (prov.) | <i>To-day and to-morrow are like having a well dug with a needle</i> |

After the relative pronoun—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Suna tareya da duka-n-abinda ke garesu | <i>They were collecting everything they had</i> |
|--|---|

The verb “to be” itself is often understood—

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Akoi Allah, ba shi gabas, ba shi yama | <i>There is a God, he is not in the east, he is not in the west</i> |
| Gaskianki                             | <i>You are right (lit., your (f.) truth)</i>                        |
| Da-n-zomo wayo gare-i (gareshi)       | <i>The young hare is cunning</i>                                    |
| Enna sariki?                          | <i>Where is the chief?</i>  |
| Kurdinsa nawa?                        | <i>How much is it?</i>  |

### *Other Ways of expressing “to be”*

The form of the pronoun ending in “na” is used, the verb “to be” itself being understood.

For this "na," which is the same particle as the preposition "of," in all probability, in Sokoto and Katsina the preposition "a" is sometimes substituted.

The conjugation is as follows—

|                             |                  |                       |
|-----------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| ina, nina <sup>1</sup>      | nia              |                       |
| kana, kaina <sup>1</sup>    | kai-a            |                       |
| kina                        | ke-a (ki-a=ki-c) | In the negative the   |
| shina, yana, yina           | shi-a, yi-a      | terminations omitted. |
| tana, ita na ? <sup>1</sup> | ita-a            |                       |
| muna                        | mu-a             |                       |
| kuna                        | ku-a             |                       |
| suna                        | su-a             |                       |

This second form is distinct from the future (I) form.

It must here be noted that while the forms of the pronoun with auxiliary "ina," etc., and "ni ke," etc., are used for the present tense conjugation of verbs, the form "ni ne," etc., is not so used.

"-na" Forms

|                |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| Shina nan      | <i>He is here</i>               |
| Shina gida     | <i>He is at home</i>            |
| Bature na gida | <i>The white man is at home</i> |
| Ba shi nan     | <i>He is not here</i>           |

"-A" Form

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ki-e wa ?                                    | <i>Who are you ?</i>  |
| Da ki-e da wa ?                              | <i>And who are you with ?</i>                                     |
| I-a gaba suna binsa                          | <i>He is before, they follow him</i>                              |
| I-a daga chikin rijia nan                    | <i>He is in that well</i>   |
| Mai-algeta i-a masa busa                     | <i>The bagpipeman, he was blowing for him</i>                     |
| Gari a nan                                   | <i>The town is there (Note omission of pronoun as with "na.")</i> |
| Sarki a da talakawa, ba talakawa a da sariki | <i>The king owns the poor, not the poor the king</i>              |
| Shi-a baba                                   | <i>He is a great man</i>  |

---

<sup>1</sup> In these the emphasis is on the pronoun. They are not used in interrogation, nor in independent sentences.



The following is obscure—

Ki-e ma en zaki shiga ki shiga    *But you, if you are going to enter,*  
 ki kawo                                    *enter and bring it*

*Future*

Use of “zama” —

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Ka zama da       | <i>You will become free</i>                   |
| Ki zama diya     | <i>                                  (f.)</i> |
| Ba ka zama da ba | <i>You will not become free</i>               |
| Na zama malami   | <i>I shall become a priest</i>                |

*To have*

Hausa agrees with all<sup>1</sup> West African languages of whatever group in having no auxiliary “to have.”

To describe possession the preposition “da,” *with*, is used. The form of the pronoun which accompanies it is most commonly that with the suffix “na.” The auxiliary “ke” is, however, also not uncommonly used—

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Ina da kurdi | <i>I have money</i>                    |
| Su ke da su  | <i>They have them or are with them</i> |

There is, however, a slight distinction in making use of the foregoing. For instance, in “Ina da shi” and “Ni ke da shi”—the first is used in making a plain statement, and the second for preference in answer to the question “Who has it?”

To express tense—that is, point of time—adverbs are added—

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Ina da shi yanzu               | <i>I have it now</i>                      |
| Wanda ya ke da shi dā ya ba ni | <i>He who had it before gave it to me</i> |

Instead of “da” it is often possible to use some other preposition such as “gare.”

Other examples of the use of “da” may be found under prepositions.

---

<sup>1</sup> The author has not found a single instance of the contrary.



Meaning conveyed by use of two nouns in apposition, one formed with "mai"—

Da kishiyoyi nan babu mai-da      *And those rival wives had no children*

PART IV

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

There are two voices—active and passive.

There is no change of form for mood, but two participles are distinguished.

Tense carries no inflection of the stem, but the pronouns are subjected to some modification, and particles are added in certain tenses.

The following is the conjugation of "so," *to love, like, want* :—

*Active Voice*

It is to be noted that in the negative both "ba" are put in in all tenses, but the second "ba" is often omitted in practice.

AORIST OR COMMON TENSE

|        | AFFIRMATIVE             | NEGATIVE                        |
|--------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1      | na so <i>also</i> ni so | ba na so ba <i>or</i> ban so ba |
| 2 (m.) | ka so                   | ba ka so ba                     |
| (f.)   | ki so                   | ba ki so ba                     |
| 3 (m.) | ya so                   | ba ya so ba                     |
| (f.)   | ta so                   | ba ta so ba                     |
| 1      | mu so                   | ba mu so ba                     |
| 2      | ku so                   | ba ku so ba                     |
| 3      | su so                   | ba su so ba                     |

PRESENT I

|        |                       |                                     |
|--------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1      | ina so                | ba ni so ba <i>also</i> ba na so ba |
| 2 (m.) | kana so               | ba ka so ba                         |
| (f.)   | kina so               | ba ki so ba                         |
| 3 (m.) | shina (yana, yina) so | ba shi, ya, i, so ba                |
| (f.)   | tana so               | ba ta so ba                         |
| 1      | muna so               | ba mu so ba                         |
| 2      | kuna so               | ba ku so ba                         |
| 3      | suna so               | ba su so ba                         |

## PRESENT II

|        |                               |                               |
|--------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1      | ni ke so <i>also</i> na ke so | ba ni so ba                   |
| 2 (m.) | ka ke so                      |                               |
| (f.)   | ki ke so                      |                               |
| 3 (m.) | shi (ya, yi) ke so            |                               |
| (f.)   | ta ke so                      |                               |
| 1      | mu ke so                      | same as negative of Present I |
| 2      | ku ke so                      |                               |
| 3      | su ke so                      |                               |

## PAST I

|        |                                   |                |
|--------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1      | na so                             |                |
| 2 (m.) | ka so                             |                |
| (f.)   | kin so                            |                |
| 3 (m.) | ya so <i>also</i> shi so, shin so |                |
| (f.)   | ta so                             | same as aorist |
| 1      | mun so                            |                |
| 2      | kun so                            |                |
| 3      | sun so                            |                |

## PAST II

|        |                           |                |
|--------|---------------------------|----------------|
| 1      | na so                     |                |
| 2 (m.) | ka so                     |                |
| (f.)   | ki ka so                  |                |
| 3 (m.) | ya so                     |                |
| (f.)   | ta so                     | same as aorist |
| 1      | muka so (K), munka so (S) |                |
| 2      | kuka so (K), kunka so (S) |                |
| 3      | Suka so (K), sunka so (S) |                |

## FUTURE I

|        |                 |              |
|--------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1      | naa so, nā so   | ba na so ba  |
| 2 (m.) | kaa so, kā so   | ka ka so ba  |
| (f.)   | kii so, kī so   | ba ki so ba  |
| 3 (m.) | shii so, shī so | ba shi so ba |
|        | yaa so, yā so   | ba ya so ba  |
| (f.)   | taa so, tā so   | ba ta so ba  |
| 1      | muu so, mū so   | ba mu so ba  |
| 2      | kuu so, kū so   | ba ku so ba  |
| 3      | suu so, sū so   | ba su so ba  |

Robinson gives "mua," "ma," "kua," "sua," "sa," "so" plural.

FUTURE II

|        |   |                             |
|--------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1      | zani so <i>or</i> zan so <i>or</i> za en so | ba zani so ba               |
| 2 (m.) | zaka so                                     | ba zaka so ba               |
|        | (f.) zaki so                                | ba zaki so ba               |
| 3 (m.) | zashi (zaya, zai), so                       | ba zashi (zaya, zayi) so ba |
|        | (f.) zata so                                | ba zata so ba               |
| 1      | zamu so                                     | ba zamu so ba               |
| 2      | zaku so                                     | ba zaku so ba               |
| 3      | zasu so                                     | ba zasu so ba               |

FREQUENTATIVE I

|        |                           |                  |
|--------|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1      | ni ( <i>or</i> na) kan so | ba ni kan so ba  |
| 2 (m.) | ka kan so                 | ba ka kan so ba  |
|        | (f.) ki kan so            | ba ki kan so ba  |
| 3 (m.) | shi (ya) kan so           | ba shi kan so ba |
|        | (f.) ta kan so            | ba ta kan so ba  |
| 1      | mu kan so                 | ba mu kan so ba  |
| 2      | ku kan so                 | ba ku kan so ba  |
| 3      | su kan so                 | ba su kan so ba  |

FREQUENTATIVE II

|        |                           |                      |
|--------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1      | ni ka so                  | ba ni ka so ba       |
| 2 (m.) | ka ka so                  | ba ka ka so ba       |
|        | (f.) ki ka so             | ba ki ka so ba       |
| 3 (m.) | shi ( <i>or</i> ya) ka so | ba shi (ya) ka so ba |
|        | (f.) ta ka so             | ba ta ka so ba       |
| 1      | mu ka so                  | ba mu ka so ba       |
| 2      | ku ka so                  | ba ku ka so ba       |
| 3      | su ka so                  | ba su ka so ba       |

This is a very doubtful tense. Robinson says "ka" is an abbreviation of "kan," and also a poetical future. Harris supports him that "ka"="kan"; also Edgar. Mischlich calls it a Sokoto variation of "ni ke so."

SUBJUNCTIVE

|        |              |                  |
|--------|--------------|------------------|
| 1      | en so (n'so) | kada en so       |
| 2 (m.) | ka so        | kada ka so       |
|        | (f.) ki so   | kada ki so       |
| 3 (m.) | shi (ya) so  | kada shi (ya) so |
|        | (f.) ta so   | kada ta so       |
| 1      | mu so        | kada mu so       |
| 2      | ku so        | kada ku so       |
| 3      | su so        | kada su so       |

## IMPERATIVE

|        |           |            |
|--------|-----------|------------|
| 2 (m.) | so, ka so | kada ka so |
| (f.)   | so, ki so | kada ki so |
| 2      | ku so     | kada ku so |

“Kar” is found for “kada” in Kano. “Ba” is also sometimes substituted for “kada,” but is not repeated after the verb.

*Passive*

## AORIST

|        |               |                      |
|--------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1      | asoni         | ba asoni ba          |
| 2 (m.) | asoka         | ba asoka ba          |
| (f.)   | asoki         | ba asoki ba          |
| 3 (m.) | asoshi, asosa | ba asoshi, asosa, ba |
| (f.)   | asota         | ba asota ba          |
| 1      | asomu         | ba asomu ba          |
| 2      | asoku         | ba asoku ba          |
| 3      | asosu         | ba asosu ba          |

## PRESENT I.

|        |           |              |                 |                         |
|--------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1      | anasona   | anakamnata   | ba anasona ba   | ba anakamnata<br>ba     |
| 2 (m.) | anasonka  | anakamnarka  | ba anasonka ba  | ba anakamnarka<br>ba    |
| (f.)   | anasonki  | anakamnarki  | ba anasonki ba  | ba anakamnarki<br>ba    |
| 3      | anasonsa  | anakamnatasa | ba anasonsa shi | ba anakamna-<br>tasa ba |
| (f.)   | anasonshi | anakamnatata | ba anasonshi ba | ba anakamna-<br>tata ba |
| 1      | anasonmu  | anakamnarmu  | ba anasonmu ba  | ba anakamnarmu<br>mu ba |
| 2      | anasonku  | anakamnarku  | ba anasonku ba  | ba anakamnarku<br>ba    |
| 3      | anasonsu  | anakamnarsu  | ba anasonsu ba  | ba anakamnarsu<br>ba    |

## PRESENT II

|        |            |                |
|--------|------------|----------------|
| 1      | a-ke-soni  | ba asoni ba    |
| 2 (m.) | a-ke-soka  |                |
| (f.)   | a-ke-soki  |                |
| 3      | a-ke-soshi |                |
| (f.)   | a-ke-sota  | same as aorist |
| 1      | a-ke-somu  |                |
| 2      | a-ke-soku  |                |
| 3      | a-ke-sosu  |                |

PRESENT II. INVERTED

To correspond to the active form "ni, su ke so"

|        |           |           |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1      | ni akeso  | ni akaso  |
| 2 (m.) | kai akeso | kai akaso |
| (f.)   | ke akeso  | ke akaso  |
| 3 (m.) | shi akeso | shi akaso |
| (f.)   | ta akeso  | ta akaso  |
| 1      | mu akeso  | mu akaso  |
| 2      | ku akeso  | ku akaso  |
| 3      | su akeso  | su akaso  |

(See note on Frequentative in Active.)

PAST I

|        |                 |                |
|--------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1      | ansoni          |                |
| 2 (m.) | ansoka          |                |
| (f.)   | ansoki          |                |
| 3 (m.) | ansosa, ansoshi |                |
| (f.)   | ansota          | same as aorist |
| 1      | ansomu          |                |
| 2      | ansoku          |                |
| 3      | ansosu          |                |

PAST II

|        |         |           |                |
|--------|---------|-----------|----------------|
|        | KANO    | SOKOTO    |                |
| 1      | akasoni | ankasoni  |                |
| 2 (m.) | akasoka | ankasoka  |                |
| (f.)   | akasoki | ankasoki  |                |
| 3      | akasosa | ankasoshi |                |
| (f.)   | akasota | ankasota  | same as aorist |
| 1      | akasomu | ankasomu  |                |
| 2      | akasoku | ankasoku  |                |
| 3      | akasosu | ankasosu  |                |

FUTURE I

|        |         |               |
|--------|---------|---------------|
| 1      | aasoni  | ba aasoni ba  |
| 2 (m.) | aasoka  | ba aasoka ba  |
| (f.)   | aasoki  | ba aasoki ba  |
| 3      | aasoshi | ba aasoshi ba |
| (f.)   | aasota  | ba aasota ba  |
| 1      | aasomu  | ba aasomu ba  |
| 2      | aasoku  | ba aasoku ba  |
| 3      | aasosu  | ba aasosu ba  |

FUTURE II

|        |          |             |                |    |             |
|--------|----------|-------------|----------------|----|-------------|
| 1      | zaasona  | zaakamnata  | ba zaasona ba  | ba | zaakamnata  |
|        |          |             |                | ba |             |
| 2 (m.) | zaasonka | zaakamnarka | ba zaasonka ba | ba | zaakamnarka |
|        |          |             |                | ba |             |
| (f.)   | zaasonki | zaakamnarki | ba zaasonki ba | ba | zaakamnarki |
|        |          |             |                | ba |             |

|        |           |               |    |           |    |    |               |    |
|--------|-----------|---------------|----|-----------|----|----|---------------|----|
| 3 (m.) | zaasonshi | zaakamna-tasa | ba | zaasonshi | ba | ba | zaakamna-tasa | ba |
| (f.)   | zaasonta  | zaakamnatata  | ba | zaasonta  | ba | ba | zaakamnatata  | ba |
| 1      | zaasonmu  | zaakamnarmu   | ba | zaasonmu  | ba | ba | zaakamnarmu   | ba |
| 2      | zaasonku  | zaakamnarku   | ba | zaasonku  | ba | ba | zaakamnarku   | ba |
| 3      | zaasons   | zaakamnarsu   | ba | zaasons   | ba | ba | zaakamnarsu   | ba |

These are all noun forms after "zasu," etc. = *they will go to the loving of them*. The possessive pronoun is masculine after "so" and feminine after "kamna."

Compare "Zasu kamna-r-mu," *They will love us*; "Zamu kamna-r-su," *We will love them*.

The noun form is not always strictly adhered to, hence, zaasoni, zaasoka, etc.

#### FREQUENTATIVE

|        |           |    |           |    |
|--------|-----------|----|-----------|----|
| 1      | akansoni  | ba | akansoni  | ba |
| 2 (m.) | akansoka  | ba | akansoka  | ba |
| (f.)   | akansoki  | ba | akansoki  | ba |
| 3 (m.) | akansoshi | ba | akansoshi | ba |
| (f.)   | akansota  | ba | akansota  | ba |
| 1      | akansomu  | ba | akansomu  | ba |
| 2      | akansoku  | ba | akansoku  | ba |
| 3      | akansosu  | ba | akansosu  | ba |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE

| SUBJUNCTIVE   | IMPERATIVE | BOTH        |
|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 asoni       |            | kada asoni  |
| 2 (m.) asoka  | asoka      | kada asoka  |
| (f) asoki     | asoki      | kada asoki  |
| 3 (m.) asoshi | asoshi     | kada asoshi |
| (f.) asota    | asota      | kada asota  |
| 1 asomu       |            | kada asomu  |
| 2 ascku       | asoku      | kada asoku  |
| 3 asosu       | asosu      | kada asosu  |

It is seen that these forms are the same as in the aorist.

NOTE.—In the foregoing tenses "shi" and "sa" are commonly interchangeable, the former being preferably Sokoto, the latter Kano dialect.

## USES OF THE TENSES

*Aorist*

This is an indeterminate tense. It is an unemphatic past, a vague present, and, if the context permits, may have a future significance. It is in common use both when precision is quite unimportant and also in narration—

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Ba ka ji ba ?                   | <i>Do you not hear ?</i>                    |
| Na ji kishirua                  | <i>I feel thirsty ? (lit., thirst)</i>      |
| Ba abinda ban yi ba             | <i>There is nothing I do not do</i>         |
| Gobe da sasafe mu tashi         | <i>We shall start very early to-morrow</i>  |
| Ban yerda ba                    | <i>I do not agree</i>                       |
| Na ki, ba ya issa ba            | <i>I refuse it is not enough</i>            |
| Rua ya tafassa ?                | <i>Has the water boiled ?</i>               |
| Ya yi dimi amma ba ya tafassa   | <i>It is hot, but it has not boiled yet</i> |
| ba tukuna                       |   |
| Ta che, to, mu je en ganshi     | <i>She said, good, we will go so that</i>   |
|                                 | <i>I may see him</i>                        |
| Mu yi gara-n-fuska; kana mu     | <i>We wash our faces, then we bathe ;</i>   |
| yi wanka; mu sasa sababi-n-     | <i>we put on new clothes</i>                |
| tufafinmu                       |   |
| Mu je, mu gani, na magani-n-    | <i>We go and see, that is proof of a</i>    |
| makariachi (prov.)              | <i>lie (lit., medicine for a liar)</i>      |
| Gobe mu chi saura               | <i>To-morrow we eat the remains</i>         |
| Yaro nan ya iya tafia ? ya tafi | <i>Can that boy do the journey ?</i>        |
| mana                            | <i>Certainly he will go</i>                 |
| Kwana shidda mu gama aiki       | <i>In six days we shall finish the work</i> |
| nan                             |   |

*Present I*

This is both the simple present and the present continuous. In narration it may be translated by the imperfect.

The verb itself acquires a substantival force, and if it admits of it, takes the termination “wa” or “ya,” though sometimes exceptions are made. If the verb is defective in the “wa” (ya) form it remains unchanged in appearance, though not in force.

For this reason, when the verb is a transitive one the direct object is attached by the copulative “n,” being in the possessive case; and if other verbs are added in

sequence they too assume a substantival force and are joined with the copulative "n."

“WA” OR “YA” TERMINATION USED

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Enna kana tafia ?                                | <i>When are you going ?</i>  |
| Shekara goma yana tafia har<br>ubansa ya hanashi | <i>He had been travelling for ten years<br/>until his father stopped him</i> |
| Enna ubanka ? Shina tafowa                       | <i>Where is your father ? He is coming</i>                                   |
| Tana zua Kano                                    | <i>She is coming (going) to Kano</i>   |
| Muna soyeya da junamu                            | <i>We are at friendship with one<br/>another</i>                             |
| Da na ganshi shina tafia (or ya<br>ke tafia)     | <i>When I saw him he was travelling</i>                                      |
| Suna isowa gulbi                                 | <i>(As) They were getting near the river</i>                                 |

In the following sentence the noun force is strengthened by the addition of a personal pronoun—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Shina tafia tasa sai ya gamu da<br>kwado | <i>He travelled until he met the toad</i> |
|--|---|

UNCHANGED FORM

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Kulum gari ya waye ina addua                     | <i>Always at daybreak I pray</i>                                  |
| Saanda ka tada su suna fada da<br>juna ? suna yi | <i>When you came upon them were<br/>they fighting ? They were</i> |
| Enna shina zamne ?                               | <i>Where is he staying ?</i>                                      |

WITH DIRECT OBJECT

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ina gina rami (for Ina gina-r-<br>rami)          | <i>I am digging a hole</i>  |
| Mi kana yi ? Ina yi-n-aiki (or<br>ina aiki)      | <i>What are you doing ? I am working</i>                                    |
| Ina so-n-ubana. Ina so-n-Allah                   | <i>I love my father. I love God</i>   |
| Ina ji-n-yungwa da kishirua                      | <i>I am hungry and thirsty</i>  |
| Kana yi-n-aiki ?                                 | <i>Are you working ?</i>  |
| Muna kamna-tasa gama ya ri-<br>gaya ya kamnagemu | <i>We love Him for He first loved us</i>                                    |
| Ina sonsa, da shi kua shina sona                 | <i>I love him and he loves me (Note<br/>the possessive form in “so-na”)</i> |

SUBORDINATE VERBS ADDED

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Ina so-n-kawa malami (for ina<br>so-n-kawa-r-malami) | <i>I want to become a mallam</i> |
|--|----------------------------------|



In this sentence "so" is masculine, and "kawa," ending in "a," feminine. Compare—

Kana so ka kawa maimagani      *Do you want to become a doctor?*

in which all the forms are pure verbs—

Ina so-n-saye-n-turmi goma      *I want to buy ten cloth-strips*

NEGATIVE

The "na" termination of the pronoun is dropped, but the verb is still treated as a substantive—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Kadan ba ka tsoro-n-allah ba shi<br>sonka                   | <i>If you do not fear God He does not love you</i>   |
| Ba su samu-n-abinchi  | <i>They find no food</i>   |
| Mugu-n-mia ba ta karewa a<br>tukunia (prov.)                | <i>Bad soup does not get finished in the pot</i>   |
| Gulbina ba shi chi-n-mutum<br>tsaka sai gefe. Wuka (riddle) | <i>My river does not eat a man in the middle but at the bank. A knife (which cuts at the edge)</i> |
| Kowa ya halbe zaki ba shi<br>samu-n-sa                      | <i>Every one shot at the lion but did not get him</i>  |
| Ba ka sona; ni, ma, bani sonki                              | <i>You do not love me; and I, I do not love you</i>  |

Compare, on the other hand—

Har gari duka ya tashi sun yi,      *Then all the town arose, they try,*  
sun yi, ba su samu ba      *they try, but they do not get him*

The following are examples of pure nouns used after pronoun in "-na," thus confirming the change of verbs into substantives in this tense—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Tun ina yaro                                | <i>Since I was a boy</i>                           |
| Don sariki shina mugu-n-sheria <sup>1</sup> | <i>Because the chief is unjust in his judgment</i> |

The following is an example of mixed idiom—

Ina so-n-en tambaye ka *instead* I want to tell you  
of Ina so-n-tambayenka or ina  
so-en-tambayeka

<sup>1</sup> See note, later, on omission of pronoun in this tense.

As with nouns, the copulative may be omitted—

Kulum kulum suna kashe mutane *They are killing people without*  
 (for kashe-m-mutane) *cease*

As with pure nouns, sometimes the copulative preposition is not put into its proper gender—

Ina kirra-n-ka *for* ina kirrarka *I am calling you*  
 Sai ya gani gawa anadaukansa *Except he sees the corpse being*  
 zua wuri-n-bizne *taken to the cemetery*

### *Etymology*

It is to be noticed that the pronoun in “na” cannot be followed by any of the forms of the verb “to be,” *e.g.*—

|            |                        |
|------------|------------------------|
| Shina gida | <i>He is at home</i>   |
| Shina nan  | <i>He is here</i>      |
| Suna baya  | <i>They are behind</i> |

From this it is clear that the two words are not in the same relation to each other as they would be if the connecting link of the verb “to be” were possible, but omitted in practice.

It might, therefore, be assumed that the syllable “na” of the pronoun is no other than the preposition “of,” not readily translateable, however, uniformly into “of,” as indeed it is not in many other cases also.

#### USE OF PRESENT I. WITH FUTURE MEANING

Kadan na fushe ta, kuna ba ni *If I pull her out, will you give me*  
 ita en yi arime? *her in marriage?*

#### WITH PAST MEANING

Ina tamaha shi bani kurdinsa *I thought he would give me all his*  
 duka *money*

#### OMISSION OF PRONOUN

The personal pronoun is a necessary adjunct to the verb, the latter being incomplete without it. If a noun precedes the verb as the subject, the 3rd personal pronoun still has to be employed.

In this tense, however, the 3rd personal pronoun is commonly omitted when the noun-subject is mentioned, which is a further indication that the verb has been changed into a noun, rendering the pronoun superfluous. This is seen from studying such a phrase as "the hat of the chief." The Hausa would not say "hat he of the chief," but simply "hat of chief."

Hence the sentences—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Malami na sha-n-gia munafiki ne                             | <i>The mallam who drinks beer is a deceiver</i>                             |
| Doki nan na sayerua (or sayesua) ne ?                       | <i>Is this horse for sale ?</i>   |
| Abega na tamaha . . .                                       | <i>Abega thinking . . .</i>   |
| Kowane na sha-n-taba . . .                                  | <i>Whoever smokes tobacco . . .</i>   |
| Wata na bada haske  | <i>The moon is giving light</i>   |
| Da hiska na busawa, rairai na shiga ga idanunka             | <i>When the wind blows the sand goes into your eyes</i>                     |
| Kadan kagani gemi da-n-uwanka na chi-n-wuta, shafa naka rua | <i>When you see your brother's beard catch fire, pour water on your own</i> |

If the pronoun "shina" were in any of the foregoing sentences used, the noun must be treated as out of the sentence, standing in apposition by itself, and having no connection with the predicate.

The uses of "shina" and "yana" are not always interchangeable.

"Shina" is preferred before a noun and verbs with "wa" termination—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Abokin mijinta shina bisa itache yana kallon abinda ta ke yi | <i>Her husband's friend was up a tree watching what she was doing</i> |
|--|---|

### *Present II*

This tense is only very rarely interchangeable with the foregoing. It is purely a verb form, and it has none of the complexity of construction which the foregoing has. It is used in asking questions, and especially in answering them. It is precise as to time, otherwise the aorist is used. In

narration it is often convenient to translate it by the imperfect tense.

The object usually precedes the sentence—

Mi ku ke yi? Aiki mu ke yi      *What are you doing? We are working*

If the latter statement had not been made in answer to a question, it would be in the form of “Muna yi-n-aiki.”

Mi su ke yi yanzu? Suna chi-      *What are they doing now? They*  
n-abinchinsu                              *are eating their food*

From this example it is seen that the idea of continuity is stronger in Present I. than in Present II.

Mi ku ke kawowa? Abinda      *What are you bringing? What we*  
muka samu chiki-n-kasua              *found in the market*  
Suka che, domi muke fasawa?      *They said, Why are we delaying?*

In the foregoing the noun form of the verb is used.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ubana ni ke so <i>or</i> ubana ni ka so       | <i>I love my father</i>                                 |
| Shi ni ke so <i>or</i> shi nika so            | <i>I love him</i>                                       |
| Shanu ya ke kashe <i>or</i> shanu shika kashe | <i>He kills oxen</i>                                    |
| Da na ganshi ya ke tafia                      | <i>When I saw him he was travelling</i>                 |
| Kowa ya ke yi shi                             | <i>Whoever shall do it</i>                              |
| Abinda na ke so                               | <i>The thing which I want</i>                           |
| Mi ya sameku, ku ke kuka                      | <i>What is the matter with you that you are howling</i> |

A perfect sense may even be found—

Tun dā, har kwanaki nan,      *For a long time back till this day,*  
mutane-n-Rimo su ke pesshi-      *the people of Rimo have plundered*  
n-hainya                              *the road*

Also a future sense—

Chiki-n-wannan lokachi ka ke      *At this season wilt thou then restore*  
mayar (mayas) wa Israila da      *to Israel their kingdom*  
mulki?

*Past I*

This is the tense that indicates simply past time, and it is often best translated by the perfect in English—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Daga enna mutume nan ya tafo ?<br>Ya fada mani ya fito daga<br>Kano. Ban san' abinda ya<br>kawo shi ba       | <i>Whence has this man come? He<br/>told me he came from Kano. I<br/>do not know what has brought him</i>                        |
| Kun rataye tufafi ?<br>Ta che da mu: kun gamu da<br>wani azne maidauka-n-nama ?<br>Muka che, mun gamu da shi | <i>Have you hung up the clothes?<br/>She said to us: did you meet a<br/>certain pagan carrying meat?<br/>We said: we met him</i> |
| Na so shi, shi kua shina so na<br>Ni, na yi murna  | <i>I loved him, he too loves me<br/>I rejoiced</i>   |
| Kin gani ?<br>Kin san abinda ya kawo ni garin<br>nan ?   | <i>Did you see it?<br/>Did you know what brought me to<br/>this country?</i>   |

*Past II*

This past only differs from the preceding in the plural forms, and in the 2nd person singular feminine. It is to be noticed that in past tense I. the 2nd person singular feminine also takes a termination. There are four uses of this tense—(1) in questions; (2) in matters of fact; (3) in narration; (4) for emphasis.

There is no negative form, that of the Past I. being used—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Enna magani-n-da kika dcbo ?<br>Mi kika gani ?<br>Mutum daia sunka buga<br>Dakuna nawa sunka gina ?<br>Enna mutane sunka kwana ?<br>Fulani sunka chi Kano<br>Mu munka buge shi<br>Ku kunka yi aiki<br>Su sunka yi sata<br>Saanda muka komo muka ga<br>kayanmu duka sun bache<br>Muka tafi kasua, muka zamna,<br>muka yi chiniki, muka komo<br>Yaushe sunka zo ? | <i>Where is the medicine you helped<br/>yourself to?<br/>What have you seen ?<br/>They have beaten a man<br/>How many huts have they built ?<br/>Where have the men slept ?<br/>The Fulani captured Kano<br/>We have beaten him<br/>You have worked (well)<br/>It is (indeed) they who have stolen<br/>When we came back we saw that<br/>all our loads were spoilt<br/>We went to the market, we sat down,<br/>we did trade, we have returned<br/>When did they come ?</i> |
|---|--|

In dependent sentences there may be a future significance—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Idan suka zo gobe                            | <i>If they come to-morrow</i>                          |
| Iyayenta sunka gane ta suna<br>murna da kuka | <i>Her parents seeing her rejoiced and<br/>shouted</i> |

### *Future I. and II*

There are two future tenses with the same meaning. In one the verb remains and is treated as a verb throughout. In the other the verb stem becomes a substantive in the same manner as in Present I.

Future I. is formed by a reduplication of the vowel of the pronoun, though some writers consider that it is an "a" that is appended throughout.

Future II. is formed by employing the verb "zani," etc., *I will go*. As one says "zani Kano," *I am going to Kano*, so the Hausa also says, "zani zamna," *I am going to sit down*. The idea of actual motion is modified to that of futurity.<sup>1</sup>

Other tenses may also have a future significance from the context. It is the practice when two future tenses follow each other to use Future II. first, followed by Future I.

### *Examples of Future I. without Object*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Kaa zama talaka                                 | <i>You will become poor</i>                                       |
| Gobe da sasafe mū tashi                         | <i>We will start very early to-morrow</i>                         |
| Komi zaayi masu ba sua beri ba                  | <i>Whatever may be done to them,<br/>they will not give it up</i> |
| Kadan ba ka zuba mai chiki-n-<br>fitila ta mutu | <i>If you do not pour oil into the<br/>lamp it will go out</i>    |
| Nī tafi ga sariki da nī che masa                | <i>I shall go to the chief and say to<br/>him</i>                 |
| Babu abinda zaya sa sua tabani                  | <i>Nothing he could do would make<br/>them touch me</i>           |

<sup>1</sup> See "The Languages of West Africa," chapter on the verb.

*With Object*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ina tamaha ni same sa da rai                | <i>I think I shall find him alive</i>                 |
| Idan ka tafi wurinsa yā fada<br>maka labari | <i>If you go to him he will tell you<br/>the news</i> |
| Idan ka so nā yi kokari                     | <i>If you like I will try</i>                         |
| To, nā kara shi                             | <i>All right I will add to it or increase<br/>it</i>  |
| Kadan na bashi takarda shi<br>tsage ta      | <i>If I give him the book he will tear<br/>it</i>     |
| Yi hankali, shii buge ka                    | <i>Take care or he will hit you</i>                   |
| Kadan na yi shiri ni kirrawo ka             | <i>When I am ready I will call you</i>                |

*Examples of Future II**Without Object*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Zasu chi                                  | <i>They go to eat or they will eat</i>  |
| Zaku mutuwa                               | <i>You will die</i>   |
| Chiki-n-Bida zamu kwana da<br>dere        | <i>We are going to sleep in Bida</i>  |
| Da zata mutua, ta che . . .               | <i>When she was about to die, she<br/>said . . .</i>  |
| Mi zamu yi ?                              | <i>What shall we do</i>   |
| Zata je ta gani                           | <i>She will go and see</i>  |
| Ba zaya kwana nan ba sai<br>Lokoja        | <i>He will not sleep here but at<br/>Lokoja</i>   |
| . . . en zasu tafowa Aghat                | <i>. . . with the intention of coming to<br/>Ghat</i>   |
| Yanzu za en je en sai sabo                | <i>Now I will go and buy a new one</i>  |
| Zani tafia en gani abokina                | <i>I am going to see my friend</i>  |
| Zani en fara waka                         | <i>I am going to begin my song</i>  |
| Zaka hadu chiki                           | <i>You will be swallowed up inside<br/>(Note.—Hadu is a verb with a<br/>passive meaning.)</i> |
| Kaka Sariki ze zamna goburo ?<br>(ze=zai) | <i>How can the King remain wifeless ?</i>   |

*With Direct Object. Insertion of preposition "of," "n"*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Zani dauka-l-riga                                   | <i>I will take the shirt. Lit., I am<br/>going to the taking of the shirt</i> |
| Babu abinda zashi samu-n-ka                         | <i>Nothing shall happen to you</i>  |
| Ya kan rika nemi yada zashi<br>samu-n-riba a wurina | <i>He is always trying to find a way<br/>to make a profit out of me</i>       |
| En zasu chi-n-tuo-n-su suna<br>buga baba-n-kube     | <i>When they go to food they strike<br/>a big bell</i>                        |
| Da komi zaka tambaye-n-su ka<br>che kadan ka yerda  | <i>And whatever you ask them for,<br/>you say, if you please</i>              |
| Zani saye-n-wannan bunsuru                          | <i>I will sell this he-goat</i>   |



*Examples of Use of Verb Stem Form of Verb when Noun Form in Existence*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Mata chan ta che ba zata tafi<br>ba sai mun zo  | <i>That woman said she will not go<br/>before we come</i> |
| Ba zaka iya dauka-n-ta (for<br>dauka-r-ta) maza | <i>You cannot take it up quickly</i>                      |
| Amma abokina yaushe zashi<br>tafo ?             | <i>But when will your friend come ?</i>                   |
| Yaushe zamu tafi ?                              | <i>When shall we go ?</i>                                 |

If the verb itself has a prepositional termination, "n" is omitted. This applies to the derived verbs in "da." There is also no "n" if there is an indirect object, either preceded or not by a preposition—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Zashi gaida sarakunansa                            | <i>He is going to salute his chiefs</i>              |
| Talauchi ba zaya kauda yauchi<br>ba                | <i>Poverty ought not to take away<br/>freedom</i>    |
| Wata rana da zamu tafia ga<br>gona                 | <i>One day as we were going to the<br/>farm</i>      |
| Zasu yi masu . . .                                 | <i>They will do to them . . .</i>                    |
| Wani iri-n-magani zaka ba ni                       | <i>What kind of medicine will you<br/>give to me</i> |
| Kowani zashi tsayesda wannan<br>mutum zaakassheshi | <i>Whoever stops this man will be<br/>killed</i>     |

The copulative "n," being often omitted in the genitive case, is also omitted with this tense, commonly with negative—

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Zashi halaka dunia   | <i>He will destroy the world</i>    |
| Fulani ba zasu fada-mu ba<br>(Commonly—Fulani ba zasu yi fada da mu ba.) | <i>The Fulani will not fight us</i> |

After "yi," *do*, it is usually omitted.

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Babu itache, kaka zan yi wuta ? | <i>There is no wood, how can I make<br/>fire ?</i> |
| Zaka yi tafia                   | <i>You are going to travel</i>                     |

This is so, especially if the simple verb stem is used and a pronoun is the direct object. It seems as if the maintenance of the substantival idea were too much of an effort and the construction too cumbersome.

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Mi zai kai-mu Hausa ? | <i>What will take us to the Hausa<br/>country ?</i> |
| Ya che zashi wanke ta | <i>He said he will wash it</i>                      |



In the following examples the personal pronoun is repeated after "zasu" in order to ensure a pure verb form—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Da Fulani suka gani ba zasu<br>samu-n-nasara, suka che, ba<br>zasu su yi fadá ba | <i>When the Fulas saw that they were<br/>not going to get the victory, they<br/>said, they would not fight</i> |
| Zashi ya koiya masa karia  | <i>He will teach him falsehood</i>   |

*Frequentative*

This is formed by the insertion of the particle "kan" between the pronoun and the verb. It has (1) a frequentative or habitual use; (2) a subjunctive or concessive sense; (3) a sense of necessity or certainty or possibility:—

1

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Shi kan yi hakka                        | <i>He is in the habit of doing so</i>                      |
| Biri ya kan yi banna, halinsa ke<br>nan | <i>A monkey always does mischief, it<br/>is his nature</i> |

2

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Alkema bisa duchi Allah shi<br>kan ba ta rua              | <i>A grain of wheat on a rock God<br/>gives it water</i>                          |
| Ki kan tafi, ki kan kunche su                             | <i>You can go and loose them</i>  |
| Wanda ya kan chi amana ba ya<br>issa ache da shi aboki ba | <i>He who plays false with friendship<br/>is not worthy to be called a friend</i> |

3

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Uwa ta kan ki danta ?                                      | <i>Can a mother hate her child ?</i>  |
| Wanda ya chi giginia, chikinsa<br>ya (or shi) kan yi chiwo | <i>Who eats the (fruit of the) fan-<br/>palm, his belly will be sure to be<br/>sick (after it). (Note.—This is<br/>not a fact.)</i> |
| Wa ya ka shiga (ka=kan)                                    | <i>Who can enter? (See previous<br/>note on the tense)</i>  |

*Etymology*

Mischlich considers that "kan" is in all probability an abbreviation of "kana," then, before—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| En na gani mache, kana ni<br>so ta=ni kan so ta | <i>If I see a woman I want her</i>     |
| En ya gani kura kana ya gudu<br>=ya kan gudu    | <i>If he sees a hyæna it runs away</i> |

*Subjunctive Mood and Tense*

There is no separate form for the subjunctive mood in any tense except the 1st person singular, which carries generally rather a future sense. Its principal usage is concessive or interrogative. The other persons are the same as in the aorist tense—

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Ina so en tafi                     | <i>I want to go</i>                                   |
| Ina so shi (or ya) tafi            | <i>I want him to go</i>                               |
| Ka yi nufi ka tafi ?               | <i>Did you intend to go ?</i>                         |
| Na yi kokari en komo               | <i>I shall try to come back</i>                       |
| Na aike shi shi kawo doki          | <i>I sent him to bring the horse</i>                  |
| Na che, en tafi en kawo shi ?      | <i>I said may I go and fetch him ?</i>                |
| Ni ma en zo en kwanta              | <i>Me too, let me come and lie down</i>               |
| Uwata ta che en tafi en wanketa    | <i>Mother said I must go and wash her</i>             |
| Ta che ta tafi ta wanke            | <i>She said let her go and wash (it)</i>              |
| Kana en tafi en chi nama-na        | <i>Then I would go and eat my meat</i>                |
| Ya che zani en gani makari-n-dunia | <i>He said I will go and see the end of the earth</i> |
| Ya che masa shi gina masa kushieya | <i>He told him to go and dig a grave for him</i>      |
| Ba na so en passa kanka ba         | <i>I do not want to break your head</i>               |
| Kada su mutu                       | <i>That they should not die</i>                       |
| Kada nama ya tashi                 | <i>Lest the game should start</i>                     |

*Imperative*

In the singular the pronoun is omitted when a second verb is there, but not usually otherwise—

|                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Tafi ka chi         | <i>Go and eat</i>            |
| Ka tafi. Ku tafi    | <i>Go ! (sing. and plu.)</i> |
| Kada ka buga        | <i>Do not strike</i>         |
| Kada su tafi tukuna | <i>They must not go yet</i>  |
| Ba magana !         | <i>Do not talk !</i>         |

The verb “beri,” *leave, let*, is largely used for giving orders, etc.—

|                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ber mu tafi                   | <i>Let us go</i>                     |
| Ber en duba tukuna enda ta ke | <i>Let me see first where she is</i> |

Sometimes, for emphasis, the pronoun precedes as well as follows the verb—

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Ka ji ka !            | <i>Hearken thou !</i>   |
| Ki je ki gurin sariki | <i>You, go to the chief, or you, go to where the chief is</i> |

*Pluperfect Conditional*

This tense or mood has no independent existence in Hausa. The requisite idea is conveyed by making use of the particle "dā" = *formerly*, with the meaning of unfulfilled intention given to it—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Dā zani tafia   | <i>I intended to go or would have gone. Lit., formerly I was going to go</i> |
| Dā na sani dā ban yi haka ba                            | <i>Had I known I would not have done so</i>                                  |
| Dā ni kai ne dā na halbe gada<br>nan                    | <i>If I had been you, I should have shot that deer</i>                       |
| Dā ba ya yi muna dabara ba,<br>dā mun fadi chiki-n-rami | <i>Had he not warned us we should have fallen into the hole</i>              |
| Dā safia ya yi muka tashi                               | <i>When it was light we started</i>  |

See also under "da" adverb of time.

*Can, to be able*

There is no special mood or tense. The verb "iya" is used. For "to be unable physically" the verb "kasa" is used.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya iya dauka-r-kaya nan? Ya<br>kasa dauka tasa   | <i>Can he lift that load? He cannot lift it</i>      |
| Shina iya yi-n-sa                                | <i>He can do it</i>                                  |
| Kana iya kai ni?                                 | <i>Can you take me?</i>                              |
| Ina iya kaiki, ba na iya kawoki                  | <i>I can take you there. I cannot bring you back</i> |
| Ba shi yiuwa ba (from "yi," do)                  | <i>He cannot</i>                                     |
| Babu abinda zashi iya rabasu<br>daga wanan abuta | <i>Nothing could break their friendship</i>          |
| Ba na iya ba en shiga kwogin<br>wuta             | <i>I cannot enter the stream of fire</i>             |

PASSIVE VOICE

A general survey of the languages of West Africa reveals the fact that all of them are without a passive voice. The 3rd personal pronoun plural is commonly, if not invariably, used with the verb in the active voice, as "They beat him," for "He was beaten."

The Hausa language seems to have acquired somehow

the notion that a passive was necessary, and to produce it merely made use of the natural method, as stated above, but with the aid of an obsolete form of "they"—namely, "a."

This is as it appears from the present-day point of view. What actually took place, probably, is that a foreign influx of population which possessed a passive voice in their own language, and also the word "su" for "they," brought in these new elements with as little disruption to the existing language as possible. "Su" attached itself to the active voice, and the obsolescent "a" maintained its existence only in an artificial usage.

Regarding "a" as "su" simply, the translation of the various passive forms is seen to run harmoniously with the active voice:—

#### *Present I*

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Anasona=suna sona               | <i>they love me</i>        |
| Ba asoni ba=ba su so ni ba      | <i>they do not love me</i> |
| Anasonka=suna sonka             | <i>they love you</i>       |
| Anakamnarka=suna kamna-r-<br>ka | <i>they love you</i>       |

#### *Present II*

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| Akesoka = su ke so ka, or  |                      |
| Aksonka = su ke sonka  | <i>they love you</i> |
| Akekamnaka = su ke kamna<br>ka, or Akekamnarka = su ke<br>kamnarka | <i>they love you</i> |
| Shi akeso = shi, su ke so  | <i>they love him</i> |
| Shi akaso = shi, suka so   | <i>they love him</i> |

#### *Past I*

|                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ansomu = sun so mu             | <i>they loved us</i>        |
| Ba ansomu ba = ba sun so mu ba | <i>they did not love us</i> |

#### *Past II*

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Akasoku = suka so ku         | <i>they have loved you</i>   |
| Ankasoku = sunka so ku       | <i>they have loved you</i>   |
| Ba asoku ba = ba su so ku ba | <i>they did not love you</i> |

#### *Future*

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Aasosu = sua so su                  | <i>they will love them</i>     |
| Zaasonsus = zasu son su             |                                |
| Ba zaasonsus ba = ba zasu son su ba | <i>they will not love them</i> |

*Frequentative*

Akansosu=su kan so su                    *they are all loved*

*Subjunctive*

Asoshi=su so shi                              *(let them) love him*  
 Kada asoshi=kada su so shi              *let them not love him*

In place of a pronoun as direct object (in the active rendering) a noun may be substituted—

Anabugu-n-yaro don mugunta-      *The boy is beaten on account of his*  
 l-sa    *bad deeds*  
 Gari akechi yanzu                         *The town is being taken now*

If “by whom” is added the active voice is reverted to for preference—

Tonawa suke chi-n-gari                      *The Ashantis are taking the town*

If the following sentence from Mischlich is correct the passive may be adhered to in the Past II. tense.

Anka chi gari da tonawa                      *The town was taken by the Ashantis*

*Anka, Aka*

There is a great tendency to use the forms “anka” (aka) instead of the active voice in—

1. Questions.
2. Narration.
3. Emphasis.

1

Yaushe ankabugeka ?                         *When were you beaten ?*  
 Enna ankaganeku ?                             *Where were you seen ?*  
 Domi ankasache doki ?                        *Why was the horse stolen ?*

2 and 3

Jia ankabugesu                                     *They were beaten yesterday*  
 Jia akayi wannan abu                           *Yesterday this thing was done*  
 Tundadewa ankasache doki                    *The horse has been stolen a long*  
    *time*  
 Akayi sansani; da safia ta yi,                 *The camp was pitched; when morn-*  
 akatashi; akayi ta fada har                   *ing came they arose and fell to*  
 akekasshe mutane wojen tala-              *fighting until about 3000 men*  
 ta; kana akadana                                   *were killed; then they ceased*

It will be noticed in the last example that it is impossible in English to keep to the passive construction throughout. The active must be resorted to.

### *Passive with Intransitive Verbs*

The passive form can also be used in Hausa with intransitive verbs. The origin of the passive form as stated above is thus fully emphasised—

|                 |                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Anazua da su    | <i>They are being brought</i>    |
| =Suna zua da su | <i>They are coming with them</i> |
| Anje Kano       | <i>They went to Kano</i>         |

### *Special Uses of Passive Form*

The passive is often used in an imperative sense—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| En kawo rua ? akawo                               | <i>Shall I bring water ? Bring it or let it be brought</i>          |
| Asa su tafichan, adauko kayamu, azo da su wurinmu | <i>Let some one go there and take our loads and bring them here</i> |

A real noun may be used with a passive prefix in those tenses where the verb acquires a substantival idea—

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Ban debo wani ba don anarua    | <i>I did not take any out on account of the rain</i> |
| Zamanin nan anayungwa          | <i>In those times there was hunger</i>               |
| Anshekara biu bai rua ba       | <i>For two years there was no rain</i>               |
| Bayan anshekara dunia tai dadi | <i>After a year there was peace</i>                  |

Also—

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Ana-nan      | <i>Thereupon</i> |
| Ana-haka-nan | „                |

In the passive as well as in the active voice the verb root is occasionally reduplicated in the plural. This gives a distributive force—

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Ankasosu   | <i>They have been loved (all of them together)</i>                  |
| Ankasososu | <i>They have been loved (i.e., each one with special attention)</i> |

*Sundry Examples of Use of Passive*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Anaikoni wurinka   | <i>I was sent to you</i>   |
| Saanda akakawoni   | <i>At the time when I was brought</i>  |
| Akahaifeni a birni-n-Katsina   | <i>I was born in the city of Katsina</i>   |
| gida-n-Musa  | <i>in Musa's house</i>   |
| Anakira-n-salla  | <i>It is the call to prayer</i>  |
| Kai a-ke-kira  | <i>You are called</i>  |
| <sup>1</sup> Anarua  | <i>It is raining</i>   |
| <sup>1</sup> AA, yanzu andauka rua   | <i>No, now the rain has stopped, lit.,<br/>been taken away</i>   |
| <sup>1</sup> Da damana anarua deri da rana   | <i>In the wet season it rains day and night</i>  |
| <sup>1</sup> Sai ankwana biu   | <i>Goodbye. Lit., Until slept twice</i>  |
| <sup>1</sup> Yanzu afara sabo  | <i>We will now begin again</i>   |
| Akanrena aiki-n-gwoni? su kan yi mana  | <i>Is the work of an expert despised?<br/>They do indeed (despise it)</i>                              |
| Ba asan garinda zaasuba  | <i>The town they were going to pour down on was not known</i>  |
| Ni za-a-aikeni ga Bornu?   | <i>Shall I be sent to Bornu?</i>   |
| Ina ji-n-motsi chan, mi anayi (or akeyi)?  | <i>I hear a noise over there. What is being done?</i>  |
| Kurdi-n-dokina, sai da nono-n-mache anasayensa   | <i>As to the price of my horse, it can only be bought with a woman's breast</i>                        |
| Ina so en tambaye shi ko ambashi abinchi? ya ehe ambashi kurdi, amma ba abashi abinchi ba tukuna | <i>I want to ask him if they have given him food? He says he has been given money but not food yet</i> |
| Daga rana nan anasukuan doki da anabuga bindiga  | <i>On that day there were horse races and shooting</i>   |
| Kada su ji tsoro, ba zaa koresu ba   | <i>Let them not fear; they will not be driven away</i>   |
| Wani lokachi zaayenka sa chikin kasua kuma?  | <i>At what time will they kill a cow again in the market?</i>  |
| Äbersu su tafi? Idan sariki ya ehe äbersu, äbersu  | <i>Will they be allowed to go? If the chief says let them go they will be let go</i>                   |
| Amma ku zaayi maku baptisma  | <i>But you yourselves will be baptized</i>   |

The use of "ke" for "na" might possibly be called a hybrid, being a transfer into the passive form of the

<sup>1</sup> In these sentences the purely passive idea is more prominent, and the substitution of "su" would be difficult.



present tense form “ke” just as if it were “na.” To complete the analogy “n” is inserted—

Ina fada maka kamada akeyin- *I will tell you how “two” is made*  
 tuo  
 A-ke-samunsu *They were caught*

If the verb has the termination “da,” the “n” is of course omitted—

Har ya zo wurinda a-ke-saida *Until he come to the place where*  
 bayi *they sold slaves*

### THE INFINITIVE

The fact that the infinitive is a noun is not lost sight of in Hausa. In rendering such sentences as—

1. To sleep is pleasant
2. I wish to go

the infinitive may be employed, though in the second example a circumlocution may be adopted.

The above may be translated as follows—

1. Berichi ya yi dadi  
 Berichi da dadi ya ke  
 Berichi yana da dadi
2. Ina so-n-tafia  
 Ina so en tafi

The following sentences furnish examples of pure nouns, or verbs used as nouns, in the same position—

Su tafi halbi *They go to shoot*  
 Su tafi gida *They go home*  
 Muka tafi farauta *We went hunting*  
 Sun tafi chi-n-tuo-n-su *They have gone to eat their food*

Sometimes the preposition “ga,” *to*, is added—

Kai, ba ka girima ba ga aiki *You are too small for work*  
 (or ga yi-n-aiki)  
 Mu tafi ga sha-n-hiska *We go to take the air*



*Examples of Infinitive in Nominative Case*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Gudu, gado - n - matsorachi ne;<br>tsayawa, na maikarifi - n -<br>zuchia | <i>To run is the inheritance of a<br/>coward; to stand (lit., standing)<br/>that of a brave man</i> |
| Gani, em ba chi ba, karre (shi)<br>kan kwana da yungwa (prov.)           | <i>To see if not to eat means the dog<br/>will sleep hungry</i>                                     |
| Gani-n-sa da keao  | <i>It is beautiful to see (lit., The seeing<br/>it is beautiful)</i>                                |
| Na samu wani abu da kamsi,<br>chinsa babu dadi                           | <i>I found something sweet smelling<br/>but not good to eat</i>                                     |

PLURAL

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Chiye - chiye ya fi chanyewa<br>(prov.) | <i>To eat a little at a time is better<br/>than to devour</i> |
|---|---|

*Infinitive as Direct Object*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Zaki ya ji kukanta                      | <i>The lion heard her cries</i>                      |
| Halbi a wutsia ya fi kuskure<br>(prov.) | <i>It is better to hit the tail than to<br/>miss</i> |
| Ina so-n-tafia                          | <i>I want to go</i>                                  |

*Infinitive as Indirect Object without Preposition*

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Mun tafi chi-n-abinchi | <i>We went to eat food</i>                 |
| Ya tafi nema-n-doki    | <i>He has gone to search for the horse</i> |
| Na zo tambaya-r-ka ne  | <i>I come to ask you</i>                   |

*Infinitive as Indirect Object with Preposition*

|                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Na aike shi gari-n-kawo-n-doki | <i>I sent him to bring the horse</i> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

In Future Tense II. it is, of course, the infinitive that is used after "zani," etc.—

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Na rassa abinda zan yi             | <i>I do not know what to do. Lit.,<br/>I am without the thing I shall do</i> |
| Ya yi terko da zaya kama<br>kurege | <i>He made a trap and he will catch<br/>a weasel</i>                         |

In such a sentence as "He heard us come," the Hausa construction is "He heard our coming," keeping "come" strictly as a noun—

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Ya ji mosi-mu<br>but— | <i>He heard us move</i> |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Na same shi zamne | <i>I found him sitting down</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|

The following are examples of the use of the subjunctive mood instead of the infinitive either with or without a conjunction :—

## WITHOUT

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ina so shi (or ya) tafi   | <i>I want him to go</i>  |
| Ya soki sarikin da mashi-u-nan<br>da ubangidansa ya ba shi riko | <i>He pierced the king with that spear<br/>which his master gave him to<br/>hold</i> |
| Ka yi nufi ka tafi ?  | <i>Did you intend to go ?</i>  |
| Na aike shi shi kawo doki                                       | <i>I sent him to bring the horse</i>   |
| Fadi en ji  | <i>Let me hear (lit., Speak so that I<br/>hear)</i>                                  |

## WITH

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Na aike shi don shi kawo doki                       | <i>I sent him to bring the horse</i> |
| (For "don," "domin." or "garin" may be substituted) |                                      |

Instead of a subordinate sentence two co-ordinate sentences may be employed—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Sun tafo gidansu suna rabawa                 | <i>They came home to divide it</i>                                 |
| Ba naku ne da zaku san zamanu                | <i>It is not for you to know the times</i>                         |
| Ta shigo gari tana nema-n-miji<br>ta yi amre | <i>She entered the town looking for a<br/>husband to marry him</i> |

*Use of the Future Tense*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na aike (mutum) wanda zashi<br>(or zaya) kawo doki                        | <i>I sent some one to bring the horse</i>                      |
| Na koiya masa yada (or kanda<br>or wada) zashi (or zaya) wanke<br>bindiga | <i>I taught him how to clean the gun</i>                       |
| Ni, ba ruana ba ne, su ne zasu<br>yishi                                   | <i>It is not my business. They are<br/>the people to do it</i> |

*Use of Prefix "mai"*

|                              |                                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Kana da mutum maitaya maka ? | <i>Have you any one to help you ?</i> |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

Note also following—

|                                |                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Mun ji tausayi en rabua da shi | <i>We were sorry to leave him</i> |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

There are two forms of present participle, both substantival. One can be used adjectivally in apposition to another noun, but the other is never anything but a noun. In reality neither is a true participle, but they are the equivalent renderings of two uses of the verb in English with the termination “-ing.”

## No. 1

Adjectival forms are produced by the use of “mai” and “ma” prefixed. The resulting adjectives take gender and plural variations as follows:—

## SOKOTO

| MASC. AND FEM. | PLURAL     | ENGLISH                  |
|----------------|------------|--------------------------|
| Maibude        | masubude   | <i>opening</i>           |
| Maifalka       | masufalka  | <i>waking</i>            |
| Maififika      | masufifika | <i>flying</i>            |
| Maifura        | masufura   | <i>blowing, kindling</i> |
| Maifuta        | masufuta   | <i>resting</i>           |
| Mairubutu      | masurubutu | <i>writing</i>           |
| Mairufe        | masurufe   | <i>shutting</i>          |
| Maijifa        | masujifa   | <i>throwing</i>          |
| Maiso          | masuso     | <i>loving</i>            |
| Maiyaswa       | masuyaswa  | <i>throwing away</i>     |
| Maizua         | masuzua    | <i>coming</i>            |

## KANO

| MASC.     | FEM.       | PLURAL   | ENGLISH                  |
|-----------|------------|----------|--------------------------|
| Mabudi    | mabudia    | mabuda   | <i>opening</i>           |
| Mafalki   | mafalkia   | mafalka  | <i>waking</i>            |
| Mafifiki  | mafifikia  | mafifika | <i>flying</i>            |
| Mafuri    | mafuria    | mafura   | <i>blowing, kindling</i> |
| Mafuti    | mafutia    | mafuta   | <i>resting</i>           |
| Marubuchi | marubuchia | marubuta | <i>writing</i>           |
| Marufi    | marufia    | marufa   | <i>shutting</i>          |
| Majefi    | majefia    | majefa   | <i>throwing</i>          |
| Masoyi    | masoyia    | masoya   | <i>loving</i>            |
| Mayashi   | mayashia   | mayasa   | <i>throwing away</i>     |
| Mazayi    | mazayia    | mazaya   | <i>coming</i>            |

NOTE — Most of the foregoing are from *Mischlich*

*Various Examples of Syntax*

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Mutum mairufe kofa                    | <i>A man who shuts the door, i.e.,<br/>Door-opener</i>                |
| Malami mairubutu yana zamne<br>chan   | <i>A mallam is sitting yonder writing</i>                             |
| Muka nema mutane ma-isu tafi<br>Balma | <i>We looked for one who would (lit.,<br/>capable of) go to Balma</i> |

## No. 2

*Noun Form*<sup>1</sup>

The other form of the present participle is as used in English in the sentences, "I am coming," "He is killing," etc. It is formed by adding "wa" to the verb stem. This produces a noun form, and not every verb is capable of taking it. Being a noun form, the pronoun that precedes it is the one ending in "-na," which suffix is dropped in the negative. In the 3rd person the form of pronoun "shina" is preferred to "yana"—

|                 |         |                   |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------|
| Zo              | zuwa    | <i>coming</i>     |
| Iya             | iyawa   | <i>being able</i> |
| Sayas (of saye) | sayaswa | <i>selling</i>    |

|              |   |               |   |
|--------------|---|---------------|---|
| Shina fitowa | <i>He is coming out</i><br>(actually now) | Ba shi fitowa | <i>He is not coming</i><br>out (actually now) |
|--------------|---|---------------|---|

These have, besides, supplementary meanings.

(1) *Futurity*

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Ina zuwa or ni ke zua  | <i>I am coming or I will come</i>   |
| Ina tafiata            | <i>I am going my journey.</i> (This is<br>the possessive pronoun at end of<br>the noun) |
| Suka che ba mu bayesua | <i>They said we will not give (it)</i>  |

(2) *Possibility or Ability*

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Shina yiuwa? ba shi yiuwa | <i>Can it be done? It cannot be done</i> |
| Gulabe suna ketaruwa?     | <i>Can the rivers be crossed?</i>        |

<sup>1</sup> See derived nouns, class 8.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ba ta amrua or aurua  | <i>She is not marriageable</i>  |
| Ba na damua   | <i>I am not to be annoyed or astonished</i>   |
| Abi-n-nan ya fasu ba shi gertuwa  | <i>This thing is broken, it is not repairable</i>   |
| Iri-n-nan ba shi geruwa   | <i>This kind cannot be improved</i>   |
| Yana yenkan rua da laujc shina damrewa shina ajiyewa sai rua ya yi sarari | <i>He cut the water with a sickle he tied it up and set it aside until the water made an open space</i> |

If the present participle is not used a series of co-ordinate sentences may be found—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Suka kama hainya, suna waka, suna yebo-n-Allah | <i>They took the road singing (and) praising God</i> |
|--|--|

PAST PARTICIPLE

The past participle is a pure adjective formed from the verb stem by a reduplication of the last syllable for the most part—

| MASC.     | FEM.       | PLURAL    | FROM               | ENGLISH            |
|-----------|------------|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Arare     | araria     | araru     | ara                | <i>lent</i>        |
| Biye      | biyia      | biyu      | bi                 | <i>followed</i>    |
| Budade    | budadia    | budadu    | bude               | <i>opened</i>      |
| Chechache | chechachia | chechachu | cheche             | <i>saved</i>       |
| Chikake   | chikakia   | chikaku   | chika              | <i>filled</i>      |
| Dafafe    | dafafia    | dafafu    | dafa               | <i>cook</i>        |
| Falkake   | falkakia   | falkaku   | falka              | <i>woken</i>       |
| Fifikake  | fifikakia  | fifikaku  | fikika             | <i>flown</i>       |
| Furare    | furaria    | furaru    | fura               | <i>blow a fire</i> |
| Futate    | futatia    | futatu    | futa               | <i>rested</i>      |
| Haifafe   | haifafia   | haifafu   | haife              | <i>begotten</i>    |
| Jefafe    | jefafia    | jefafu    | jefa               | <i>thrown</i>      |
| Karikache | karikachia | karikatu  | karikata           | <i>bent</i>        |
| Kiraye    | kirayia    | kirayu    | kira               | <i>called</i>      |
| Koshashc  | koshashia  | koshashu  | koshi              | <i>satisfied</i>   |
| Karbabe   | karbabia   | karbabu   | karba              | <i>received</i>    |
| Konanc    | konania    | konanu    | kone               | <i>burnt</i>       |
| Matache   | matachia   | matatu    | mutu               | <i>dead</i>        |
| Ninanc    | ninania    | ninanu    | nina               | <i>ripened</i>     |
| Ramtache  | ramtachia  | ramtatu   | ramche<br>(ramtye) | <i>borrowed</i>    |
| Rubutache | rubutachia | rubutatu  | rubutu             | <i>written</i>     |
| Rufafe    | rufafia    | rufafu    | rufe               | <i>shut</i>        |
| Sananc    | sanania    | sananu    | sani               | <i>known</i>       |

|           |            |          |        |                    |
|-----------|------------|----------|--------|--------------------|
| Satache   | satachia   | satatu   | sata   | <i>stolen</i>      |
| Shaidade  | shaidadia  | shaidadu | shaida | <i>proven</i>      |
| Shiriaye  | shiriayia  | shiriyau | shiria | <i>prepared</i>    |
| Soyaye    | soyayia    | soyayu   | so     | <i>beloved</i>     |
| Tafasashe | tafasashia | tafasasu | tafasa | <i>boiled</i>      |
| Tarare    | tararia    | tararu   | tara   | <i>assembled</i>   |
| Toyaye    | toyayia    | toyayu   | toya   | <i>baked</i>       |
| Tsarare   | tsararia   | tsararu  | tsara  | <i>guarded</i>     |
| Wankake   | wankakia   | wankaku  | wanke  | <i>washed</i>      |
| Yasashe   | yasashia   | yasasu   | yas    | <i>thrown away</i> |
| Yirdade   | yirdadia   | yirdadu  | yirda  | <i>believed</i>    |
| Zayaye    | zayayia    | zayayu   | zo     | <i>come</i>        |

### Examples of Syntax

|   |   |
|---|---|
| A Kano akoi takardu rubutatu dayawa   | <i>At Kano are many written books</i>   |
| A Kano akoi rubutatu-n-takardu dayawa   | „   |
| Kada ka tafi wuri-n-sariki, sai ka ga kofa budadia or Kada ka tafi wuri-n-sariki sai ka ga budadia-l-kofa | <i>Do not go to the chief until you see his door open</i>   |
| Doiya nan dainye che, wadanga kua dafafu ne   | <i>This yam is fresh those however are cooked</i>   |
| Lemu da ka kawo mani ba nunanu ba ne  | <i>The limes you brought me are not ripe</i>  |
| Yara nan lalata ne, da suna samari akakialisu, shi ne ya sa   | <i>These boys are corrupted, when they were young they were neglected; that is what caused it</i> |
| Ya damra fitila juyaya a bisa adaka   | <i>He has tied the lamp on the box upside down</i>  |
| Zakara ya zamna adaki matache   | <i>The cock lay in the room dead</i>  |

### VERBAL ADVERBS

These are formed from the verb stem with the prefix “a,” which may perhaps be the preposition “on,” and the final vowel is changed to “e,” as—

|         |      |        |                  |          |      |        |                  |
|---------|------|--------|------------------|----------|------|--------|------------------|
| Abude   | from | budu   | <i>open</i>      | Ajefe    | from | jefa   | <i>thrown</i>    |
| Adarime | „    | damre  | <i>tied</i>      | Akafe    | „    | kafa   | <i>fastened</i>  |
| Afalke  | „    | falka  | <i>waked</i>     | Akwanche | „    | kwanta | <i>laid down</i> |
| Afifike | „    | fifika | <i>flown</i>     | Akunche  | „    | kunche | <i>loosed</i>    |
| Afure   | „    | fura   | <i>kindled</i>   | Amache   | „    | mutu   | <i>dead</i>      |
| Afuche  | „    | futa   | <i>rested</i>    | Amanche  | „    | manta  | <i>forgotten</i> |
| Ahadie  | „    | hade   | <i>swallowed</i> | Arataye  | „    | rataya | <i>hung</i>      |

|             |             |   |         |                   |                |
|-------------|-------------|---|---------|-------------------|----------------|
| Arubu-tuche | from rubutu | <i>written</i>                            | Asage   | from tsaga        | <i>drawn</i>   |
| Arufe       | „ rufe      | <i>shut</i>                               | Atsaye  | „ tsaya           | <i>(stand)</i> |
| Ashike      | „           | <i>melled</i>                             | Asanche | „ sani            | <i>erect</i>   |
| Ashirige    | „ shiriga   | <i>laden, placed on top of each other</i> | Ataushe | „ tausa or taushe | <i>pressed</i> |
| Asoye       | „ so        | <i>loved</i>                              | Awanke  | „ wanka           | <i>washed</i>  |
|             |             |   | Azamne  | „ zamna           | <i>seated</i>  |
|             |             |   | Ayashe  | „ yas             | <i>thrown</i>  |
|             |             |   | Azaye   | „ zo              | <i>come</i>    |

These forms are not all translatable into English in the same way—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Na ga kaza afike                         | <i>I saw the chicken flying away</i>                    |
| Na ga kofa abude                         | <i>I saw the door ajar</i>                              |
| Na ga mutum azaye                        | <i>I saw the man had come</i>                           |
| Na ishe shaifu Usman asoye ga Filani     | <i>I met the sheikh Usman the beloved of the Fulas</i>  |
| Ya tashi tsaye a chiki-n-tsakar-ya-n-uwa | <i>He got up and stood in the midst of the brethren</i> |

(In this the prefix “a” is dropped.)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Na ganeshi akewaye ga yara dayawa                                    | <i>I saw him surrounded by many boys</i>       |
| Sai ga mutum biu daura da su atsaye                                  | <i>But two men were standing by them</i>       |
| Suka iske kogi achike  | <i>They found the river full</i>               |
| Sun gan'shi azona kaman dā (“azona” euphonic for “azone” = “azamne”) | <i>They saw him seated as before</i>           |
| Ga sauran zuma a-ajiye   | <i>See the rest of the honey is put down</i>   |
| Na bar mashi chan akafa a jikinsa                                    | <i>I left the spear there fast in his body</i> |

### USE OF INVERTED PERSONAL PRONOUN

There are only three verbs in Hausa that are exceptions to the rule that the subject pronoun precedes the verb. They are all defective, and only appear in the forms given here—

|        |                  |                   |                          |
|--------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1      | Zani             | <i>I will go.</i> | Used in the future tense |
| 2 (m.) | zaka             |                   |                          |
|        | (f.) zaki        |                   |                          |
| 3 (m.) | zashi, zaya, zai |                   |                          |
|        | (f.) zata        |                   |                          |
| plu. 1 | zamu             |                   |                          |
| 2      | zaku             |                   |                          |
| 3      | zasu             |                   |                          |



“Za” is the reverse of “zo,” *come*, and so means “go.”

|                      |                         |              |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| Yaka (m.), yaki (f.) | <i>come here</i>        | } Imperative |
| Yaku                 | <i>come here (plu.)</i> |              |
| Jeka (m.), jeki (f.) | <i>go</i>               | } Imperative |
| Jeku                 | <i>go</i>               |              |

“Je” is also used in the ordinary way preceded by the pronoun—

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Zani Kano                        | <i>I go, or will go, to Kano</i>                       |
| Na biku har wurinda zaku         | <i>I will follow you to the place you are going to</i> |
| Ke je ki                         | <i>Go thou! (f.)</i>                                   |
| Ni ma za en je ni en rama abinda | <i>And I will go and revenge myself</i>                |
| ubana ya yi mini                 | <i>on my father</i>                                    |
| Ya tafi ya je sari oban          | <i>He went and killed his father</i>                   |

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

There are two impersonal verbs in Hausa “akoi” (akwoi) and “wai” (wae).

#### *Akwoi*

“Akwoi” means *there is*. There is no change for tense, time being indicated by adverbs—

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Tun a mafari akoi Allah | <i>God has been since the beginning or There is a God ever since the beginning</i> |
|-------------------------|--|

Sometimes the 3rd personal pronoun plural follows in answer to a question, as “Akwoi su” *There are*.

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Akwoi su dayawa, ba arasasu | <i>There are plenty, they are not wanting</i> |
|-----------------------------|---|

#### *Wai (wae)*

“Wai” = “ya che,” *he says*. It is always used when the speaker is not speaking on his own authority. It is not universally interchangeable with “ya che.”

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Wai ku tafi                  | <i>He says you must go or you are to go</i>       |
| Wani yaro ya zo wai shi Audu | <i>A certain boy has come, he says he is Audu</i> |

NOTE.—Miller says this is a Zaria idiom.



Under the head of impersonal verbs may also be mentioned the use of the noun "saura," *remainder*.

Saura kadan muu gama aikinmu *In a short time we shall finish our work*

Saura kwana uku *In three days or There is left three days*

### Yi

The verb "yi" is often used as an impersonal verb.

Ya yi kusa *It is near*

*See in chapter on idioms under "yi"*

## CHAPTER VI

### ADVERBS

ADVERBS may be divided as follows:—

1. Place.
2. Time.
3. Manner.
4. Affirmation and Negation.
5. Interrogation.

Most adverbs are either compound words made up wholly or partly from other parts of speech, or, in regard to adverbs of place in particular, some nouns are used without any change of form.

There are some words which are classed under adverbs of manner and time of which it is hard to decide whether they are not better classed as conjunctions, a doubt which is equally common to other West African languages.

Some West African languages, among which may be mentioned Yoruba, Efe, and Mende have long lists of intensitive adverbs. These words are very commonly attached to certain verbs alone, and cannot be used with other verbs. Hausa is quite deficient in this respect, but seeing that many of these intensitives have an approximation to the root of the verb to which they are attached when needed, it may be assumed that they are derived from that verb. If that be confirmed, a germ of the same idea lies in Hausa in the use of the neuter form ending in "u" following the principal verb (*see* under division of verbs).

## 1. ADVERBS OF PLACE

*Simple*

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Nan, nana   | <i>here, there.</i> (For etymology see under demonstrative pronoun)                |
| Nanyanga    | <i>here.</i> (Not in colloquial use)   |
| Chan, chana | <i>there, yonder</i>   |
| Tare        | <i>together.</i> (Related to "tara," to collect)                                   |
| Enda        | <i>where</i> (relative) For "enna?" <i>where?</i> see under interrogative adverbs) |

*Compound*

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| Daga nan           | <i>hence, from here</i>                 |
| Daga chan          | <i>thence, from there</i>               |
| Da nisa, daga nisa | <i>far, from afar.</i> (Nisa is a noun) |
| Da kusa, daga kusa | <i>near</i>                             |
| Wuri-n-nan         | <i>here, at this place</i>              |
| Wuri duka          | <i>everywhere</i>                       |
| Wuri-n-da          | <i>where, the place which</i>           |
| Ko-enna            | <i>anywhere</i>                         |
| Dabara, daura      | <i>near, alongside</i>                  |

*Nouns used as Adverbs*

|                   |                 |         |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| Gaba              | <i>in front</i> | Waje    | <i>outside, beside</i>      |
| Baya              | <i>behind</i>   | Tsakani | <i>between</i>              |
| Bisa              | <i>above</i>    | Chiki   | <i>inside</i>               |
| Kasa              | <i>below</i>    | Kusa    | <i>near, nearly, almost</i> |
| Kalkas, kalikashi | <i>below</i>    | Nisa    | <i>far, distant</i>         |

*Verbs used as Adverbs*

|         |               |        |               |
|---------|---------------|--------|---------------|
| Gangare | <i>across</i> | Ketare | <i>across</i> |
|---------|---------------|--------|---------------|

*Examples of Uses*

*Nan, chan, daga chan, wuri-n-nan, etc.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Shina nan                                      | <i>He is here, or there—not far</i>   |
| Shi ke nan                                     | <i>It is so.</i> This phrase is used as a sort of mark of punctuation in conversation |
| Da na yi maka magana, shi ke nan, har ka yishi | <i>Since I have told you, so it is, you must do it</i>                                |
| Tana chan. Tana chana                          | <i>She is yonder</i>  |

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Shina nana                     | <i>He is here</i>                       |
| Ba shi nan                     | <i>He is not here</i>                   |
| Zo nan                         | <i>Come here</i>                        |
| Aje bindiga nan                | <i>Put the gun here</i>                 |
| Ba shi daga nan                | <i>He is not here</i>                   |
| Tumaki duka suna nan? Ba su    | <i>Are all the sheep here? They are</i> |
| duka nan ba                    | <i>not all here</i>                     |
| Mi zaki yi nana?               | <i>What will you (f.) do here?</i>      |
| Daga chan na gani abi-n-mamaki | <i>There I saw a wonderful thing</i>    |

*Note that the adverb precedes for emphasis*

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Daga nan muka tashi, muka issa | <i>From there we started (and)</i>        |
| nana                           | <i>we reached here</i>                    |
| Daga wuri-n-nan                | <i>There or from there or from that</i>   |
|                                | <i>place</i>                              |
| Daga nan har chan              | <i>From here to there</i>                 |
| Daga chan har nan              | <i>From there to here</i>                 |
| Abokina shina (or yana) nan    | <i>My friend is here</i>                  |
| Tun yaushe kana nan zamne?     | <i>How long have you been sitting (or</i> |
|                                | <i>living) here?</i>                      |

NOTE.—If “wuri-n-nan” were used it would follow “zamne”

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Suna nan zamne da shi         | <i>They are sitting there with him</i>     |
| Ina tamaha kwanaki shida daga | <i>I think it is six days from here to</i> |
| nan zua ga Bornu              | <i>Bornu</i>                               |

### Tare

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Mutane duka suna tafia tare | <i>All the people are travelling together</i> |
|-----------------------------|---|

“Tare” is distinct from “tari” =very many

### Enda, wurinda

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Suka tambaye sa enda (or wur-<br>inda) uwasa ta ke                     | <i>They asked him where his mother</i><br><i>was</i>   |
| Enda hali, muni keao ne; enda<br>ba hali ba, keao muni ne<br>(proverb) | <i>Where there is character unfavour-<br/>able appearance counts for<br/>nothing; where there is no<br/>character good looks are of no<br/>avail</i> |
| Ba enda ban tafi ba  | <i>There is nowhere I have not been</i>  |
| Tafi enda zaka   | <i>Go to your destination</i>  |

### Nisa, da nisa, etc.

|                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Bature shina nisa tukun | <i>The European is still far off</i> |
| Bature ba shi nisa      | <i>The European is not far</i>       |
| Na gan' shi daga nisa   | <i>I saw him afar off</i>            |
| Ya tsaya daga nisa      | <i>He stood afar off</i>             |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Kadan ku tafi nisa daga garemu,<br>kada ku shida nisa daga uban-<br>enku | <i>If you go far away from us, do not<br/>encamp far from your parents</i> |
| Mu tafi wuri da nisa   | <i>Let us go to a far place</i>  |
| Ban gan' su ba, suna da nisa   | <i>I have not seen them, they are a<br/>long way off</i>                   |
| Rua nisa ya ke daganan   | <i>The water is far from here</i>  |
| Dengina sun tafi nisa duk' sun<br>rabu da ni                             | <i>My countrymen have gone far away,<br/>they have all parted from me</i>  |
| Ya yi nisa   | <i>It is far</i>   |
| Suna tafia sun yi nisa   | <i>They went a long way</i>  |

*Kusa, da kusa, etc.*

|                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Shi ne kusa gareni | <i>He is near me</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|

NOTE.—“ *Kusa gare* ” really makes a preposition.

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Ba ka gani ba ya kusa gareka | <i>You do not see he is near you</i>      |
| Ya kusa chika da rua         | <i>It is nearly full of water</i>         |
| Shina kusa da shi            | <i>He is near him. (Preposition here)</i> |
| Shina kusansa                | <i>He is near him. (Noun here)</i>        |
| Daga kusa                    | <i>From near</i>                          |
| Ga shi tsakanin kulkusa      | <i>See him in the middle very close</i>   |
| Kusa da juna                 | <i>Close to each other</i>                |
| Ya kusa mutua                | <i>He was nearly dead</i>                 |
| Rani ya kusa zakua           | <i>The dry season is near</i>             |
| Rana ta kusa fadowa          | <i>The sun is nearly setting</i>          |
| Aikinsa ya kusa karewa       | <i>His work is nearly finished</i>        |
| Ya kusa fadua                | <i>He almost fell</i>                     |

The last five examples show that the fact that “ *kusa* ” is always a noun is not lost sight of. The succeeding verb takes a noun form (in “ *wa* ”), and “ *kusa* ” and the verb are thus two nouns in apposition—

|            |                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| Ya yi kusa | <i>It is near (not he is near)</i> |
| Ku yi kusa | <i>Come near</i>                   |

*Koenna, wuri duka*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Allah shina koenna. Allah shina<br>wuri duka | <i>God is everywhere</i>                            |
| Koenna sun sha gia sun koshi                 | <i>Wherever they drink beer, they get<br/>drunk</i> |
| Koenna ka tafi Allah shi nana                | <i>Wherever you go God is there</i>                 |

*Dabara, daura*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Su jeru daidai ba na so su tsaya<br>daura da juna | <i>Let them fall in properly. I do<br/>not want them to stand one<br/>(slightly) in front of another</i> |
|---|--|

*Gaba, baya*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Suna tafia gaba ina binsu daga baya    | <i>They are walking in front, I am following them behind</i> |
| Ki wuche gaba, rua-n-Madina ba kusa ba | <i>Pass on, the water of Medina is not near</i>              |
| Ba shi iya shi dauki kayansa nan gaba  | <i>He cannot carry his load on</i>                           |

*Bisa, kasa, kalkas, etc.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Shi ne daga bisa, ni ne daga kalkas     | <i>He is on top, I am underneath</i>                    |
| Ya shido daga bisa                      | <i>He came down from aloft</i>                          |
| Kadan ka kai shi bisa, ka kawo-shi kasa | <i>When you have carried it up, bring it down again</i> |
| Kai bisa!                               | <i>Carry it up</i>                                      |
| Tainya shi! shi dauka kaya a bisa       | <i>Help him to carry it up</i>                          |
| Mu fadi kasa                            | <i>We fell down</i>                                     |
| Zamna kasa                              | <i>Sit down</i>   |
| Ku aje kasa                             | <i>Put it down</i>                                      |
| Safko kalkas daga itache                | <i>Come down from the tree</i>                          |

*Waje*

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| Ya fito waje | <i>He came outside</i> |
|--------------|------------------------|

“Waje” might equally well be called a noun here in the objective case after “fito”

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Sun fita waje sun yi yaki | <i>They went outside and fought a battle</i> |
|---------------------------|--|

*Tsakani*

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| Aje tsakani | <i>Put it between</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------|

*Chiki*

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Muka samu yara suna worigi daga chiki | <i>We found some boys playing inside</i> |
| Sa chiki                              | <i>Put it inside</i>                     |

*Gangare. Used with hills*

|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Gangare duchi | <i>Across the mountains</i> |
|---------------|-----------------------------|

*Ketare used with water as well as land*

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Ketare gulbi-n-nan | <i>Across this river</i> |
| Ketare chan        | <i>That side</i>         |
| Ketare duchi       | <i>Over the rock</i>     |

## 2. ADVERBS OF TIME

Those marked \* are also conjunctions. Those marked † are also prepositions.

*Simple*

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| *Kuma                     | <i>again, also</i>               |
| *Kana (K), kan, kanda     | <i>before that, until, then</i>  |
| Kamin                     | ”                                |
| *Dada (S)                 | ”                                |
| †Har, hal                 | <i>until</i>                     |
| Hario                     | <i>again, yet</i>                |
| Tun, tunda                | <i>while, since, while as ye</i> |
| Tuni (K), tuntuni         | <i>long ago, already</i>         |
| Tukun, tukuna             | <i>yet, not yet</i>              |
| Tukunche                  | ” (rare)                         |
| Nada                      | <i>before</i>                    |
| Abada, hal abada          | <i>for ever</i>                  |
| Tutur, tutut, tutuk, tutu | <i>for ever</i>                  |
| Kulum                     | <i>always</i>                    |
| Dā                        | <i>of old</i>                    |
| Da                        | <i>when</i>                      |
| Karshe                    | <i>lastly</i>                    |

Take (S) = koyanzu, and, nan da nan

|             |                             |  |
|-------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Yao         | <i>to-day</i>               | } These are,<br>strictly<br>speaking,<br>nouns |
| Jia         | <i>yesterday</i>            |  |
| Shekaranjia | <i>day before yesterday</i> |  |
| Gobe        | <i>to-morrow</i>            |  |
| Jibi        | <i>day after to-morrow</i>  |  |
| Gata        | <i>the third day ahead</i>  |  |
| Chita       | <i>fourth day ahead</i>     |  |
| Bara        | <i>last year</i>            |  |
| Bana        | <i>this year</i>            |  |
| Badi        | <i>next year</i>            |  |

*Compound*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ananan   | <i>thereupon, after that.</i> From “a”<br>the prep. = on, at, and “nan”<br>here |
| Yanzu (ya-n-zu)  | <i>now</i>  |
| Ko-yanzu   | <i>now immediately</i>  |
| Saa-n-da, lotunda, lokachinda,<br>wokachinda, kwanakinda | <i>when (relative)</i>  |
| Nan da nan   | <i>immediately</i>  |

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Daganan                         | <i>thereupon</i>                        |
| (Yaushe ? When ? see            | interrogative adverbs)                  |
| Koyaushe                        | <i>at any time, immediately, always</i> |
| Saa-nan, lotu-nan, lokachi-nan, | <i>now, these days</i>                  |
| zamani-nan, kwanaki-nan         |   |
| Saa duka, lokachi duka, lotu    | <i>at any time</i>                      |
| duka                            |   |
| Wani lotu                       | <i>another time</i>                     |
| Tundadewa (S)                   | <i>long since</i>                       |
| Dadewa                          | <i>long since</i>                       |
| Dadai                           | <i>ever. Usually with negative ;--</i>  |
|                                 | <i>never</i>                            |
| Da wuri, Dauri (S)              | <i>of old, formerly</i>                 |
| Da fari (S)                     | <i>at first</i>                         |
| Chikin da-farko (K)             | <i>at first</i>                         |
| Da safe                         | <i>early morning</i>                    |
| Da mareche                      | <i>at evening</i>                       |
| Da dere                         | <i>at night</i>                         |
| Zama-zama                       | <i>after a little time</i>              |
| So dayawa                       | <i>often, many times</i>                |
| †Baya ga                        | <i>after. (Prep. really)</i>            |
| Baya-n-wannan                   | <i>after this</i>                       |
| †Agaba                          | <i>in front</i>                         |
| Gaba ma                         | <i>later on, in the future</i>          |
| Nan gaba                        | <i>henceforth, in future</i>            |
| Gaba daia (S)                   | <i>at once</i>                          |
| Baki daia (K)                   | <i>”</i>                                |

*Kuma, again, more, also*

Derived from *koma*, to return

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Zo kuma                        | <i>Come again</i>                          |
| Babu nisa kuma                 | <i>No farther</i>                          |
| Ba ni da kurdi dayawa kuma     | <i>I have no more money at all</i>         |
| A-kan-yi-su da kasa, a-kan-yi- | <i>They are made of earth, they are</i>    |
| su da itache kuma              | <i>made of wood also</i>                   |
| Wani lokaehi za-a-yenka sa a   | <i>When will they kill a bull again in</i> |
| kasua kuma                     | <i>the market</i>                          |
| Audu ya yi sata ; Mahma ya yi  | <i>Audu has stolen ; Mahma has also</i>    |
| sata kuma                      | <i>stolen. (This does not imply</i>        |
|                                | <i>that Mahma has stolen again,</i>        |
|                                | <i>i.e., a second time)</i>                |

*Kana, kan, kanda. See also below under “ before ”*

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Kana ni kan tafi ni kan chi   | <i>Then I used to go, I used to eat</i>  |
| tuona                         | <i>my food</i>                           |
| Dafari na gani sariki, kana   | <i>First I saw the chief, then the</i>   |
| galadima, da karshe sariki-n- | <i>minister, lastly the head butcher</i> |
| pawa                          |  |



|   |  |
|---|--|
| Hario ya kirani so-biu, kana na<br>amsa | <i>Again he called me twice, then I<br/>answered</i> |
| Ina son Allah, kana abokina             | <i>I love God before (then) my friend</i>            |
| Kan su gama                             | <i>Before they have done</i>                         |
| Kanda ta rabika (poetic)                | <i>Before it part you</i>                            |
| Kanda na je daga nan                    | <i>Before I go from here</i>                         |

*Dada = Kana*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Suka fide nama dada suna bida-<br>n-wuta | <i>They skinned the animal, then they<br/>(began) to look for fire</i> |
|--|--|

*Kamin*

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Kamin rua shi taso                  | <i>Before the rain started</i>                            |
| Sai ka shiria kamin na zo           | <i>You must get ready by the time I<br/>come</i>          |
| Shiga daki kamin masugayya<br>su zo | <i>Go into the room before the assem-<br/>blage comes</i> |

*Har*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Har rana ta fadi   | <i>Until the sun sets</i>   |
| Har yao  | <i>Until to-day</i>   |
| Yana tafia har yanzu; ba ya<br>gama ba                                 | <i>He was travelling until now, he<br/>did not meet him</i>                         |
| Tsaya har ya tafi  | <i>Wait till he has gone</i>  |
| Ka jira ni har en zaka   | <i>Wait till I come</i>   |
| Ya tambaye ta har so uku   | <i>He asked her three times</i>   |
| Ya jira har ruaye su zuba kasa   | <i>He waited until the rain came (lit.,<br/>Waters pour on the earth)</i>           |
| Na rike asiri-n-nan har ga<br>yanzu (yao)                              | <i>I have kept this secret until now<br/>(to-day)</i>                               |
| Kada ka maide mani dana har<br>na gamu da kai daga chiki-n-<br>lakhira | <i>You need not return my son to me<br/>until I meet you in the other<br/>world</i> |

*Hario*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Hario mutume-n-nan, ko ubanta,<br>ya zaka ya maishieta | <i>Again the same man, or perhaps it<br/>was her father, came (and) made<br/>her return</i> |
|--|---|

See example under "kana"

*Tun*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Tun bara                               | <i>Since last year</i>  |
| Tun da safe                            | <i>Since morning</i>  |
| Tun jia bawa shi ke, amma yao<br>da ne | <i>Only yesterday he was a slave, but<br/>to-day he is free</i> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Tun a mafari akoi Allah                      | <i>God has been since the beginning (lit., Since in the beginning there is God)</i> |
| Ubanka yana da rai? Aa, ya mutu tun ina yaro | <i>Is your father alive? No, he has been dead ever since I was a boy</i>            |
| Ku tuba tun ba ku mutu ba                    | <i>Repent before you die</i>  |
| Tun dā                                       | <i>Since a long time back. This is distinct from "tunda," while, etc.</i>           |
| Tun dā akoi daki                             | <i>From the first there has been a hut (here)</i>                                   |
| Tun dā babu sai Allah                        | <i>From the beginning nothing but God</i>   |

*Compare "tun a mafari" above*

*Tunda=tun lokachinda*

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Tun da ni ke, kulum na fadi gaskia | <i>Ever since I was born (lit., I was I have always spoken the truth</i> |
| Tunda ankahaifeni ban ga bature ba | <i>Ever since I was born I have never seen a white man</i>               |

*Tunda, while*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Tunda suna chika bindigansu dorina ta tafi nisa     | <i>Whilst they are loading their guns the hippopotamus went far away</i> |
| Ina son chi tuona da safe tunda ba shi yi ba sainyi | <i>I want to eat my food in the early morning before it gets cold</i>    |
| Tunda ba shi kare maganansa                         | <i>Before he had finished talking</i>                                    |
| Tunda ya mutu birni ya zama wofi                    | <i>Since he died the city has become desolate</i>                        |

*Tuni, tuntuni, tundadewa.*

The last is a stronger form

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Ya tafi Kano tuni                     | <i>He has already gone to Kano</i>                               |
| Na rabu da gida tuni                  | <i>I left home long ago</i>                                      |
| Na yi shi tuntuni                     | <i>I did it very long ago</i>                                    |
| Karifi tara ne, antafi makaranta tuni | <i>It is nine o'clock, everybody has gone to school long ago</i> |
| Ka shimfida tufa tuni?                | <i>Have you spread the cloth yet?</i>                            |
| Ka toya gurasa tuni?                  | <i>Have you baked bread recently?</i>                            |
| Ina jira-n-ka tundadewa               | <i>I have been waiting for you a long time</i>                   |
| Ya mutu tundadewa                     | <i>He died long since</i>  |

*Tukuna, as yet; not yet (in negative sentences)*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Abinchi ya kare? Tukuna, ba ya nuna ba sarai | <i>Is the food (lit., finished) ready? Not yet, it is not properly cooked</i> |
| Ban chi komi ba tukuna                       | <i>I have not eaten anything yet</i>  |
| Ba ya zo ba tukuna                           | <i>He has not come yet</i>  |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Anzo da mutane? Tukuna<br>anazua da su    | <i>Have they brought the men? They<br/>are just bringing them now</i> |
| Yina chan tukuna, ya ki zua               | <i>He is over there just now, he refuses<br/>to come</i>              |
| Ku zamna tukuna                           | <i>Sit down for the moment</i>  |
| Ba doki rua tukuna, kana ka<br>tafi kasua | <i>Give the horse water first, then go to<br/>the market</i>          |
| Sai tukun shi damre maikarifi             | <i>Except he bind the strong man first</i>                            |
| Ya zakua tukun                            | <i>He will come first</i>   |

*Nada*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ba ya ji tsoro ba kama-n-nada                  | <i>He was not afraid as before</i>         |
| Litafi nan duka daine (daia ne)<br>kama-n-nada | <i>This book is all the same as before</i> |
| Ta waza wukanta kama-nada                      | <i>She sharpened her knife as before</i>   |

*Abada, hal abada*

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Allah shi ne abada                    | <i>God is for ever, i.e., eternal</i> |
| Iblis shina chiki-n-wuta har<br>abada | <i>Satan is in the fire for ever</i>  |

*Tutur, etc.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ku sani dunia ba ta zama tutur<br>(poetic) | <i>You know the world will not last<br/>for ever</i> |
|--|--|

*Kulum*

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Kulum suna kashe mutane<br>kulum kulum | <i>They never ceased killing men</i> |
|--|--------------------------------------|

*Dā, of old*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Kano dā gari karami ne   | <i>Kano was formerly a little town</i>   |
| Dā ni talaka ne, yanzu na samu<br>dukia da dama                        | <i>Formerly I was poor, now I am<br/>better off</i>  |
| Mutane-n-dā suka zamna nan,<br>ba aiki ba, ba komi sai abinchi<br>tari | <i>Men of old lived here, without work,<br/>without anything but plenty of<br/>food (lit., food-abundance)</i> |

NOTE.—“*The men who*” would be “*mutanenda = mutane dā*”

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Tasunia kwanaki-n-mutane dā | <i>A story of the days of men (of) old</i> |
| Mu tuna dā                  | <i>Let us recall former times</i>          |

*Da, when (relative)*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Da ta gane ni ta tambayeni:<br>enna ubanka?                    | <i>When she saw me she asked me:<br/>Where is your father?</i>                               |
| Da suna yi-n-magana Bornu<br>ban sani ba abinda su ke<br>chewa | <i>As they were speaking the Bornu<br/>language I did not know what<br/>they were saying</i> |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Da suka dauka abu duka chiki-<br>n-gari sun sa wuta | <i>When they had taken everything out<br/>of the town they set fire to it</i> |
| Da safia ya yi muka tashi                           | <i>When it was daylight we started</i>  |
| Da mareche ya yi                                    | <i>When it was evening</i>  |
| Da gari ya waye                                     | <i>When the dawn had come</i>   |

*Saanda, (Saa'da) lokachinda, lotunda, wokachinda*  
= when (relative)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Saanda na samu dama  | <i>When I am better</i>   |
| Lotunda na tashi ba na ji lafia<br>ba                                    | <i>When I started I did not feel well</i>   |
| Kun zo da safiŋga? I, muka<br>zo, amma kwanakinda muka<br>zo kana karatu | <i>Did you come this morning? Yes,<br/>we came, but when we came you<br/>were reading</i> |

*Saa-nan, lotu-nan, lokachi-nan, zamani-nan, kwanaki-nan (or saa-  
n-nan, etc.)* = Then, at that time

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Lotu nan ina tamaha shekarata<br>sha daia | <i>I think I was eleven years of age<br/>then</i> |
| Saa nan Musa ya tafo                      | <i>Then Musa came</i>                             |

Also—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Daga rana nan anasukua-n-doki<br>da anabuga bindiga | <i>On that day there were horse races<br/>and shooting</i> |
|---|--|

*Wani lotu, etc.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Wani lotu shi kan kawo labari<br>nagari, da wani lotu mugu | <i>Sometimes he brings good news,<br/>sometimes bad</i> |
|--|---|

*Karshe*

(See example under "Kana")

*Yao, gobe, jia, etc.* Usually at beginning of sentences

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Yao ba mu tafi ba makaranta  | <i>To-day we did not go to school</i>  |
| Jia na ji labari da ni ke so | <i>To-day I heard the news I liked</i> |

*Ananan*

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Ananan da safe | <i>After that, in the morning . . .</i> |
|----------------|---|

*Yanzu, Koyanzu*

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Yanzu-yanzu                  | <i>Now at once</i>                              |
| Hal ya zua yanzu             | <i>Up till now</i>                              |
| Ya che Bature shi tafo yanzu | <i>He said, Let the white man come at once</i>  |
| Koyanzu na yi koda na gaji   | <i>I will do (it) at once though I am tired</i> |
| Koyanzu na tafi Lokoja       | <i>Just now I go to Lokoja</i>                  |

*Koyaushe*

|                     |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Ina tunawa koyaushe | <i>I am always remembering it</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|

*Dadai*

*See other ways of expressing "never" under "never."*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Mutume kama-n-wannan dadai ban gani ba | <i>I have never seen a man like this</i>                  |
| Bako gari ba ka zo dadai ba            | <i>A strange city to which you have never before come</i> |
| Dadai ban gani ba anadafa dabino       | <i>I never saw dates cooked before</i>                    |
| Ban yi sata dadai                      | <i>I have never stolen</i>                                |

*Nan da nan.* (Usually in narration)

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Ka yi shi nan da nan | <i>Do it at once</i> |
|----------------------|----------------------|

*Daganan*

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Daganan sariki yache | <i>After that, or thereupon, the king said</i> |
|----------------------|--|

*Dawuri, dauri*

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Na ji magana nan dawuri | <i>I have heard that before</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|

*Dafari*

(See example under "kana")

*Da safe, da mareche*, etc., points of time. "Da" is the preposition "with"

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Muka tashi da dere                                | <i>We started at night</i>                                  |
| Ina tamaha sun aike wadansu daga chiki-n-dere nan | <i>I think they sent some persons away during the night</i> |
| Gobe da safe mu tashi                             | <i>To-morrow we start</i>                                   |



adverb in Hausa, and the two modes of expression may be used indifferently.

*Never*

Besides using "dadai" the verb "taba" *to touch*, may be used.

Ban taba gani mutume-n-nan *I have never seen this man until*  
 ba sai yao *to-day*  
 Ka taba zua Kano? *Have you ever been to Kano?*

*Before*

"Before" besides being expressed by "kana," "tunda," etc., may be translated by means of the negative, an idiom which is the standard one even as far as in the far distant Mende language—

Shekara-n-birni-n-Daura alfina *The age of the city of Daura was*  
 da dari Filani ba su tafo ba *2100 before the Fulani came*

"Tun" may also be used with a negative—

Ya rabu da gida tun abokina *He left home before his friend came*  
 ba ya zo ba

Also by special verbs—

Na rigaya shi zua nan *I reached here before him (lit., I anticipated him)*

Na fara zua nan ya bini a baya *I reached here first (lit., I began to come here he followed me behind)*

*Since.* Expressed with "not," etc., when "tunda" not used

Ya yi shekara biu ban gan'ka ba *I have not seen you for two years*  
 Sai kaka: ba ya fi wata biu ba *Not till autumn: it is not more*  
 anshipkata *than two months since it was sown*

Ya yi shekaru dayawa da zuansa *It is several years since last he came*  
 Bakoi uku ke nan da uwana ya *It is three weeks since my brother*  
 yenke yatsansa *cut his finger*

(See example under Sundry Expressions of Time below)

*For, duration of time*

Kwana uku ke nan da na ke yi *For three days I have had dysentery*  
 atuni

Na shekara fudu ina chikin karatu *For four years I was learning to*  
 read

*Whilst*

Wa zaya yerda wani ya chi *Who will agree to another's taking*  
 sarota tasa, shi ko yana da rai *his kingdom whilst he is still alive*

*See under preposition "chiki-n"*

*Soon*

Dufu ya yi kusa *It will soon be dark. (Lit., Dark-  
 ness makes near)*

*Sundry Expressions of Time*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Dare-n-jia ansache kaya guda                        | <i>On the previous night a load was<br/>stolen</i>          |
| Yao kwana uku ban chi komi<br>ba                    | <i>It is now three days since I have<br/>eaten anything</i> |
| Daga chiki-n-shekara nan                            | <i>In that year</i>   |
| Sun yi masa aiki kwana shida<br>ko uku              | <i>They worked for him six or three<br/>days</i>            |
| Kadan sun kwana dere uku ko<br>fudu                 | <i>When they had stayed three or four<br/>nights</i>        |
| Muka zamna daganan kwanaki<br>dayawa                | <i>We remained there many days</i>                          |
| Gobensa (= goben-sa)                                | <i>On the next day</i>                                      |
| Yao shekara-n-mu goma sha biar<br>da ni da buta nan | <i>I have had that jar for exactly<br/>fifteen years</i>    |

## 3. ADVERBS OF MANNER

Those marked \* are also used as conjunctions.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Bale (S), bale-fa (S), barshema<br>(K), balantana (Zanf.), bal-<br>anta, barshe (K) | <i>much more, much less</i>                                |
| Daidai  | <i>properly, equally, together, uni-<br/>formly</i>        |
| Daia-ne   | <i>ready, completely</i>                                   |
| Dakir, daket  | <i>with difficulty</i>                                     |
| Dole (S)=tilas (K)  | <i>with force</i>  |
| Fache   | <i>much less, however (? fa and verb<br/>"to be" (f.))</i> |
| Gaya (K)=kwarai   | <i>exactly</i>   |
| Girshi  | <i>suddenly</i>  |
| Haka, hakanan   | <i>so</i>  |
| Halama  | <i>perhaps</i>   |



|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Kadai                          | <i>alone</i>  |
| Kadan                          | <i>a little</i> (also an adjective)                         |
| Kama (noun), kamada, kamanda   | <i>how, like as</i>   |
| *Ko                            | <i>even. See under conjunctions</i>                         |
| Kokaka                         | <i>anyhow</i>   |
| Kwarai (S)                     | <i>exactly, properly</i>                                    |
| Lale                           | <i>in any case, of necessity, of a surety</i>               |
| Mana                           | <i>then, do!</i> A command of urgency                       |
| Maza                           | <i>quickly</i>  |
| *Sai                           | <i>alone, except, etc. Also preposition and conjunction</i> |
| *Saidai                        | <i>except</i>   |
| Sanu                           | <i>softly</i>   |
| Sarai                          | <i>properly</i>   |
| Tari                           | <i>many.</i> (A noun=abundance)                             |
| Tilas (K)                      | <i>with force</i>   |
| Wada (S), yada (K), awa (Zanf) | <i>how, the manner in which</i>                             |
| Wajib                          | <i>of necessity</i>   |
| Watakila                       | <i>perhaps</i>  |

*Bale, etc.*

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Na yi murna doki daia balefa<br>biu | <i>I rejoiced for one horse much more<br/>over two</i> |
| Ba ya tafi Masar ba bale Makka      | <i>He did not go to Egypt much less<br/>to Mecca</i>   |
| Bale fa mu dada                     | <i>It is much better for us to wait</i>                |

*Daidai*

This is possibly not the same word as "daidai" a contraction of "daia daia"—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Maida tana motsi, ba ta tsaya<br>daidai ba | <i>The table moves it does not stand<br/>evenly</i> |
| Suna gina dakuna biu daidai                | <i>They build two houses alike</i>                  |
| Ban ji daidai ba                           | <i>I did not hear correctly</i>                     |

*Daia ne (=it is one, unity)*

|                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Sun yi aikinsu daia ne | <i>They did their work completely</i> |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|

*Dakir, daket*

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Dakir na samu hainya | <i>I found the road with difficulty</i> |
|----------------------|---|

*Gaya (K) = kwarai*

Ya gudu gaya

*He ran well*

*Girshi*

Girshi na gani kura  
Girshi ya mutu

*Suddenly I saw the hyæna*  
*Suddenly he died*

*Haka*

Gara haka or Guma haka  
Haka shi ke

*Better so*  
*It is so.* (In reply to a question  
or as a sort of punctuation in a  
speech)

Ko ba haka ba ?

*Or is it not so?* (Used at end of  
question)

Ya che haka

*He said so (or thus)*

Ina fada maka haka shi ke

*I tell you ; it is so*

Wani iri-n-sanda ke nan da  
nauyi haka ?

*What kind of stick is this, it is so  
heavy*

Haka da girima

*So big*

*Hakanan*

Hakanan shi ke

*It is so (in reply to a question)*

Nan da nan ya mutu, ashe! ii,  
hakanan ne

*He died immediately ; ah, yes, that  
is so*

*Halama*

Mu nemi halama muu samu

*Let us look, perhaps we shall find it*

*Kamada, kamanda (Kama-n)*

Ina fada maka kamada akeyishi  
Obangiji ya bashi ya komo  
kamanda shi ke da

*I will tell you how it was done*  
*The Lord granted to him that he  
should become as he was before*

The noun "kama," from which "kamanda" is made up (kama-da), is used with an adverbial sense with the copulative "n"—

Yare ya yi kama-n-uwansa  
Da rana ta fara tashi ina ganinta  
kama-n tana fita daga chikin  
gulbi

*The boy is like his mother*  
*When the sun began to rise I saw  
it as though it was coming out of  
the sea*

Kama-n ya shiga gari  
Kama-n ba su san'ka ba

*As he enters the town*  
*As if they did not know you*

*Ko (see conjunctions also)*

Ban gani ko daia ba

*I have not seen even one*

*Kokaka*

Kawoshi kokaka *Bring it anyhow*

*Kadai*

Kada daia na gani kadai *I saw only one crocodile*

(See also under "sai")

Sariki ba rago kadai ya ba ni *The chief gave me not only a ram*  
 ba, da akuya *but a goat*

Allahu shi kadai shi ba ka *God alone does good to you to-day*  
 kcauta yao

*Kadan, kadan*

Kadan kadan ! *Very little*  
 Sai anjima kadan *Wait a little*  
 Shina yin aiki kadan kadan *He works very little*

*Kwarai*

Rana ta ye kwarai *The sun is very hot*  
 Ya chi dayawa kwarai *He ate a great deal*  
 Doki shina gudu kwarai *The horse trots well*  
 Babu nisa kwarai *Not very far*

*Lale*

Lale ina zua da mareche *In any case I shall come in the*  
*evening*  
 Yao lale ya zo *He comes to-day in any case*

*Mana*

Tafi! mana ! *Go ! do !*  
 Ku zo mana *Come along*  
 Ka fada masa shi zo mana *Tell him he must come at once*  
 Mana ! mana ! *Come along ! or Wake up !*

*Maza*

Ku tafi maza-maza *Go very quickly*

(See below, other ways of saying "quickly")

*Sai, also a conjunction*

Sai gobe *Until to-morrow. A parting salu-*  
*tation*  
 Sai da-safe *Good night. (Lit., Until the*  
*morning*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Sai anjima  | <i>Good-bye for the present. (Lit., till you have waited)</i>                                   |
| Sai anjima kadan  | <i>Wait a little. In a little while</i>   |
| Sai lafia   | <i>Quite well. A reply salutation</i>   |
| Salbarka = ? sai albarka  | <i>Nothing but thanks. No thank you</i>   |
| Sai gaisua  | <i>Nothing but thanks. Lit., only a salutation</i>  |
| Sai ambideka  | <i>(Wait) till you are sent for</i>   |
| Sai ankwana biu   | <i>Good-bye for an indefinite time</i>  |
| Sai kada daia na gani   | <i>Lit., Until you have slept twice</i>   |
| Sai ka dawo   | <i>I saw only one crocodile</i>   |
| Babu bawa ko daia daga chiki-n-gida sai ni  | <i>Until you return</i>   |
| Sai ubana ya che mani   | <i>There was not a single slave in the house except me</i>                                      |
| Kafa-ta duka sai jini   | <i>But my father said to me</i>   |
| Sai mutume daia akesashi ya hawa bisa itache  | <i>My feet were nothing but blood</i>   |
| Ya che masa sai ya aika wuri-n-sariki-n-Sokoto ya tambay'shi                          | <i>Only one man was made to climb the tree</i>  |
| Ya che mani babu komi sai lafia   | <i>He said to him he must send and ask the king of Sokoto first</i>                             |
| Shi ne, shi ke shaka azaba-n-lakhira; sai ya gamu da wuta ya kan che kaitaro (poetry) | <i>He said nothing to me except that all was well</i>   |
| En ba ka da kurdi ba ka da komi, sai kare   | <i>He it is he doubts the pains of hell. Wait till he meets the fire and he will say, Alas!</i> |
| Abinda ki keso sai en baki  | <i>If you have no money you have nothing, you are only a dog</i>                                |
|   | <i>Anything you (f.) like I will give it you</i>  |

*Saidai*

Mun kira ka saidai ba ka jimubab  
ba *We called but you did not hear*

*Sanu. See also under salutations*

Ya tafi sanu (sanu sanu) *He went slowly (very slowly)*

*Sarai*

Ya yi magana sarai *He speaks correctly*

*Tilas (a noun by origin)*

Kama shi tilas *Seize him by force*  
 Amma ka sha rua nan da tilas *But you drink this water from necessity*  
 Ya ki zakua, don wannan ya sa shi tilas *He refused to come so he forced him to*

Ya kamata maihankali da dere    *A prudent man ought to stay at home at night. He should not go out except forced to, say, by somebody dying or calling you imperatively*  
 ya yi shi zamna wuri daia, shi  
 ber' yawo sai tilas, ko wani ya  
 mutu, ko wani ya kiraka tilas

*Tari* (a noun)

Turawa suna tara soja gabas da    *The white men are collecting soldiers east of Kuka in vast numbers*  
 Kukawa tari tari

*Watakila*

Wotakila obanka shi zo kuwa    *Perhaps your father will come too*

*Wajib*

Wajib mu do haiyasu (poetry)    *We ought to take their road*

*Wada, yada, awa* (these are nouns)

Yada ankayi zani fada maka    *How (=the way) it was done I will tell you*

Ka iya gaya mini yada mutume-    *Are you able to tell me how this man died*  
 n-nan ya mutu

*Formation of Certain Adverbs*

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives in English with the addition of the suffix "ly." In Hausa corresponding adverbs—which may also equally be adjectives—are formed from nouns with the preposition "da," *with*.

The following are a few :—

*Time*

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| Da marecho | <i>at evening</i>                |
| Da rana    | <i>by day</i>                    |
| Da sasafe  | <i>in the very early morning</i> |
| Da baya    | <i>last</i>                      |

*Place*

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| Da nisa | <i>far</i> |
|---------|------------|

*Manner*

|                   |                   |                 |                     |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Da gaskia         | <i>truly</i>      | Da hankali      | <i>carefully</i>    |
| Da yawa           | <i>many</i>       | Da wuri         | <i>of old</i>       |
| Da karifi         | <i>powerfully</i> | Da kafa         | <i>on foot</i>      |
| Da dadi           | <i>pleasantly</i> | Da gudu         | <i>with running</i> |
| Bugashi da karifi |                   | Beat him well   |                     |
| Ya tafi da kafa   |                   | He went on foot |                     |

The use as adverbs of simple adjectives or others of different formation from the foregoing is not unknown—

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Ya fita nagari              | <i>He has turned out well</i>            |
| Enda ya shiga duka ka bishi | <i>Wherever he enters you follow him</i> |
| Enda zaka duka a dunia      | <i>Wherever you go in the world</i>      |

There is also the use of the intransitive verb form in “u,” usually in the 3rd person. It accompanies its parent verb, and is probably an indication of the origin of those intensives in other languages, so many of which have the same root as the verb they accompany—

Adamreshi shi damru      *Tie it tight*

Other examples are given under the verb.

There are some adverbs in English, such as “very,” “too much,” etc., which are rendered in Hausa in a variety of ways:—

*Very*

By Reduplication

Farifari, *very white*      Maza maza, *very quickly*

Kadan kadan, *very little*

With colours the second part may be modified.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Fari-fet, fet-fet (S)                    | <i>very white</i>                             |
| Fari fer, fer-fer (K)                    | ”   |
| Lafia lau or lau-lau                     | <i>very well</i>                              |
| Ja-wur, wur-wur                          | <i>very red</i>                               |
| Baki kirin, kirin-kirin                  | <i>very black</i>                             |
| Uwata tana da rai amma ta tsofa da gaske | <i>My mother is alive but she is very old</i> |

See also examples under “kwarai.”

*Too, too much*

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Na fayc chi       | <i>I ate too much</i> |
| Na chi na faifaye | ”                     |

*Quickly*

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Kada ka dedi ka yi hanzeri       | <i>Do not delay, make haste</i>                          |
| En ka komo da samli em baka lada | <i>If you come back quickly I will give you a reward</i> |

*Like as.* (See "kama")

By Reduplication

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Kare kare                  | <i>Like a dog</i>                        |
| Bawa-bawa                  | <i>Like a slave</i>                      |
| Sarki sarki                | <i>Like a king</i>                       |
| Ya bada keauta sarki-sarki | <i>He presented the gift like a king</i> |

#### 4. ADVERBS

##### *Of Affirmation and Negation*

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| I, ii          | <i>yes</i>   |
| E, eye (K)     | <i>yes</i>   |
| Owo (Zanf)     | <i>yes</i>   |
| Naam           | <i>yes.</i> Only used in answer to a roll call or summons. Means "I am here"                     |
| Ai             | <i>really</i>  |
| Ashe           | <i>truly</i>   |
| Labadda        | <i>certainly, no doubt</i>   |
| Hakika         | <i>truly</i>   |
| Gaskia ne      | <i>It is true</i>  |
| To             | <i>all right</i>   |
| Aa             | <i>no.</i> Instead of a single word reply simple sentences are often preferred.                  |
| La, la la      | <i>No</i> (Arabic). Used as an exclamatory "No" rather than negating another person's statement. |
| Ba . . . ba    | <i>not</i>   |
| Babu (=ba-abu) | <i>no, not, without</i> (prop.)  |

##### *Examples of use of "ba"*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ba ya tafi ba                                | <i>He did not go</i>  |
| Ba ka ji ba ?                                | <i>Do you not hear (understand)</i>   |
| Ban sani ba                                  | <i>I do not know</i>  |
| Ba ni da komi da ni ke ba su                 | <i>I have nothing to give them</i>  |
| Ba daia da kiba                              | <i>Not one was fat</i>  |
| Ba kowa da ya zaka nana ?                    | <i>Has no one come here</i>   |
| Ba namu ba ne                                | <i>It is not ours</i>   |
| Kad' Allah kashe ka ba mununi<br>ba          | <i>Lest God slay thee because of thy unbelief. (Lit., You not a believer) (poet.)</i> |
| Baba-n-da ba wuri yaro ne<br>(prov.)         | <i>The big man who is penniless is a boy (ba wuri=not a cowry)</i>                    |
| Jini ba ya magani-n-kishirua ba<br>(proverb) | <i>Blood is not a cure for thirst</i>   |

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Fadawa sunka che, la, ba ka ba shi | <i>The councillors said, No, do not give it him</i> |
| Ba abinda zan chi                  | <i>There is nothing for me to eat</i>               |

“Ba” is sometimes used as a negative form of interrogation—

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| Ka ji ba ? | <i>Do you not hear ?</i> |
|------------|--------------------------|

Sometimes one “ba” is omitted, especially if several co-ordinate sentences follow each other—

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ba ni da kurdi, ba ni da karifi ba | <i>If I have no money I am powerless</i> |
|------------------------------------|--|

### *Babu*

*With pronouns is often interchangeable with “ba”*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Babu komi or ba komi ba                           | <i>Nothing at all</i>   |
| Ba kowa or babu kowa                              | <i>Nobody</i>   |
| Babu kowa da ya yirda da shi                      | <i>There is no one who believed in him</i>                                      |
| Babu nisa   | <i>Not far</i>  |
| Babu ruanka (idiom)                               | <i>It does not concern you</i>  |
| Babu abinda kana iya yi                           | <i>There is nothing you can do</i>  |
| Babu maitafia ga rijia da dere                    | <i>No one goes to the well at night</i>   |
| Babu mutum da ya taya masa                        | <i>No one helped him</i>  |
| Ba abinda babu                                    | <i>There is nothing short</i>   |
| Babu daiansu or babu daia chikinsu                | <i>Not one of them</i>  |
| Da babu wawa gara da wawa (proverb)               | <i>It is better to own a fool than nothing</i>                                  |
| Komi ya bache hankuri a babu or ne babu (proverb) | <i>Everything goes wrong where patience is wanting</i>                          |
| Don babu na uwansu chiki                          | <i>Because their mother's (food) was not amongst the other (dishes of food)</i> |

### *Example of “babu” for “ba” with Verb*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Sariki nan babu shi da da                 | <i>That king had no son</i>                             |
| En ka tafi babu ina gaferta maka          | <i>If you go I will not pardon you</i>                  |
| Munche masu, mu babu zamusha nono wurinku | <i>We said to them, We will not drink milk with you</i> |



## 5. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Kaka ? (K)        | <i>How? In what manner? This word is not coupled with other adverbs as in the English phrases, "How far?" "How soon?"</i> |
| Aa ? (S)          | <i>How?</i>   |
| Yaushe ?          | <i>When?</i>  |
| Tun yaushe ?      | <i>Since when?</i>  |
| Wani lokachi ?    | <i>What time?</i>   |
| Nawa ?            | <i>How many? How much?</i>  |
| Domi ? (=do-n-mi) | <i>Why? On account of what?</i>   |
| Gari-n-mi ?       | <i>Why? On account of what?</i>   |
| Ba ?              | <i>Not? (See under Affirmative and Negative adverbs.)</i>   |
| Enna ?            | <i>Where?</i>   |
| Daga enna ?       | <i>Whence?</i>  |

*Kaka, Aa*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Kaka ka ke ? Kaka ki ke ?                    | <i>How are you? (m. or f.)</i>  |
| Kaka iyalinka ?                              | <i>How is your family?</i>  |
| Kaka sunanka ?                               | <i>What is your name?</i>   |
| Da kaka zaka tafia yaki babu fadawa ?        | <i>And how will you go to war with no officers?</i>                                     |
| Ka gani kaka su yi gina ga kalkashi-n-kasa ? | <i>Do you see how they dig under ground? (Kaka is not directly interrogative here.)</i> |
| Kaka zan yi en sami wannan mashi ?           | <i>How shall I be able to find this spear?</i>  |

*Yaushe* (usually with present and future)

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Yaushe ka zo nan ?         | <i>When did you come here?</i>         |
| Yaushe sariki shina gida ? | <i>When will the chief be at home?</i> |
| Yaushe zamu tafia ?        | <i>When shall we go?</i>               |

*Tunyaushe*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Tunyaushe barao ya beri gari ?             | <i>Since when has the thief left the town?</i>             |
| Wani lokachi ? also wani saa ? wani lotu ? |  |
| Wani lokachi zaayenka sa a kasua kuma      | <i>What time will they kill a cow in the market again?</i> |

*Nawa*

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Yaro nan shekarunsa nawa ?  | <i>How old is this boy?</i>   |
| Nawa shekaru-n-doki-n-nan ? | <i>How old is this horse?</i> |
| Guda nawa ?                 | <i>How many?</i>              |

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Nawa nawa ?                     | <i>How much each ?</i>  |
| Kwoi guda nawa na sayerua ne ?  | <i>How many eggs are there for sale ?</i>                             |
| Nawa nawa anasayerua ?          | <i>How much are they sold for each ?</i>                              |
| Nawa anasayesda su ?            | <i>How much are they all ?</i>  |
| Ku nawa kuka tafi wuri-n-sata ? | <i>How many of you went to the place where the theft took place ?</i> |

*Domi, don mi*

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Domi ka che haka ? | <i>Why do you say so ?</i> |
| Domi ka zo ?       | <i>Why have you come ?</i> |

*Garinmi*

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Gari-n-mi sunka bache ? | <i>Why are they lost ?</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|

*Enna ?*

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Enna shi ke ? Enna ta ke ?            | <i>Where is he ? Where is she ?</i>                   |
| Daga enna kun tafo ?                  | <i>Where have you come from ?</i>                     |
| Enna ka fito ?                        | <i>Where have you come from ?</i>                     |
| Enna hankalinka ?                     | <i>Where is your sense ?</i>                          |
| Enna danka ?                          | <i>Where is your son ?</i>                            |
| Enna zaka ?                           | <i>Where are you going ?</i>                          |
| Enna ka ke ?                          | <i>Where are you ?</i>                                |
| Enna kana zamne ?                     | <i>Where are you staying ?</i>                        |
| Enna hainya-r-gida ?                  | <i>Which is the way home ?</i>                        |
| Enna marabi - n - wannan da wanchan ? | <i>What is the difference between this and that ?</i> |
| Babu marabi tsakaninsu                | <i>There is no difference between them</i>            |
| Ka tambayesa, Enna uwasa ?            | <i>Ask him where his mother is ?</i>                  |
| Enna sunanka (=kaka sunanka)          | <i>What is your name ?</i>                            |
| Enna ruanka da wannan ?               | <i>What have you got to do with that ?</i>            |
| Enna azenchi-n-wannan ?               | <i>What does this mean ?</i>                          |

*For Adverbs. Interrog.**How*

Besides being translated by "nawa" or "kamada" various circumlocutions are necessary to represent this English word—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Daga Kano zua Katsina na da nisa ?                       | <i>Is it far from Kano to Katsina ?</i>  |
| Daga nan kingi-n-mu (or, sauran-mu) nawa mu issa Kwara ? | <i>How long before we reach the Kwara (Niger)? How many weeks before . . .</i> |

## CHAPTER VII

### PREPOSITIONS

#### SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS

|                  |                                   |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A (K)            | <i>at, on</i>                     |
| Da               | <i>with</i>                       |
| Ga               | <i>to</i>                         |
| Gare             | <i>towards</i>                    |
| Har (K), hal (S) | <i>up to, until</i> (also adverb) |
| Ma               | <i>to</i>                         |
| Wa (K)           | <i>to</i>                         |
| Na (m.) n'       | <i>of</i>                         |
| Ta (f.) t, l, r  | <i>of</i>                         |
| Sai              | <i>except</i> (also adverb)       |

#### COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS

Formed from a noun or verbal noun with the preposition "of" varying according to the gender of the foregoing. Very commonly the masculine form "n" is used for the feminine "t," "l," or "r" for euphony. The copulative may also be entirely omitted, as is often the case with nouns not used with a prepositional force, the two thus standing in apposition.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Do-n- (K)                                   | <i>on account of</i> (verb <i>do</i> = "dauka," "doka," <i>to take</i> ) |
| Domi-n- (S)                                 | <i>on account of</i>   |
| Gari-n- (Zanf)                              | <i>on account of</i>   |
| Zua-r- (more commonly Zua-n-)               | <i>towards.</i> ("Zua" = <i>coming</i> )                                 |
| <sup>1</sup> Kai-n- (kan)                   | <i>on top of</i>   |
| <sup>1</sup> Bisa-r- ( <i>also</i> bisa-n-) | <i>on top of</i>   |
| <sup>1</sup> Kasa-n-                        | <i>under, bottom of</i>  |
| Kalkashi-n-                                 | <i>,"</i>  |

---

<sup>1</sup> A = *on*, may or may not be prefixed to these.

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> Gaba-n-              | <i>in front of</i>                 |
| <sup>1</sup> Baya-n-              | <i>behind</i>                      |
| Tsaka-r- ( <i>also tsaka-n-</i> ) | <i>in middle of</i>                |
| Tsakani-n-                        | <i>between</i>                     |
| <sup>1</sup> Chiki-n-             | <i>in</i>                          |
| <sup>1</sup> Woje-n-              | <i>beside, outside of, towards</i> |
| Shiya-l- (S)                      |                                    |
| Abaki-n-                          | <i>in exchange for</i>             |
| Kama-r- (Kama-n-)                 | <i>like</i>                        |
| Kusa-r- (kusa-n-)                 | <i>near. See also "Kusa da"</i>    |
| Gu-n-                             | <i>to, at the place of</i>         |
| <sup>1</sup> Wuri-n-              |                                    |
| Bigiri-n- (K)                     | <i>instead of</i>                  |
| Gurbi-n- (Zanf)                   | <i>"</i>                           |
| Maimaki-n- (S)                    | <i>"</i>                           |
| Tamka-r-                          | <i>like</i>                        |
| Batu-n-                           | <i>with reference to</i>           |
| Kafi-n-                           | <i>before</i>                      |

*Compound Prepositions formed with "da," with*

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Bam-da    | <i>different from</i>                   |
| Dabara da | <i>in front of and near one another</i> |
| Daura da  | <i>"</i>                                |
| Gami da   | <i>together with</i>                    |
| Kusa da   | <i>near to</i>                          |
| Tare da   | <i>together with</i>                    |
| Saba-da   | <i>on account of</i>                    |

*Other Compound Prepositions*

Daga *from*

This preposition can be combined with many others, as, "Daga chikin" for "chikin," etc., etc.

A, at, on

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Muka beri kaya-mu a wani gari                              | <i>We have left our loads at another town</i>                             |
| Tafia a hankali  | <i>Slow travelling</i>  |
| Ahmadu ya samu miki a hanu-n-dama                          | <i>Ahmadu has a boil on his right hand</i>                                |
| Tun a mafari akoi Allah                                    | <i>God has been since the beginning</i>                                   |
| Da sunka ketare daia, biu, a na-uku sunka issa wuri-n-kasa | <i>When they had crossed one, two, at the third they reached dry land</i> |
| Mi ku ke yi a-nan  | <i>What are you doing there?</i>  |

<sup>1</sup> A = on, may or may not be prefixed to these.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Azaba-l-allahu a rana-l-lakhira           | <i>The pains of God on the day of judgment</i>        |
| Na tura mutum a rua                       | <i>I pushed the man into the water</i>                |
| Ya fadi a rua                             | <i>He fell into the water</i>                         |
| Ya fada rua (Robinson)                    | <i>He flung himself into the water</i>                |
| Halbi a wutsia ya fi kuskure<br>(proverb) | <i>To hit the tail is better than to miss</i>         |
| Ya fi su duka a dauka-n-kaya              | <i>He was better than they all in carrying a load</i> |
| Ya koma a chan a Bornu                    | <i>He returned yonder to Bornu</i>                    |
| Da ankasheka a banza                      | <i>You would have been killed for nothing</i>         |

*Da*, with. Also by, of, etc.

#### Instrument

|                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ya buge shi da bulala | <i>He beat him with a whip</i> |
| Ya yenke shi da wuka  | <i>He cut it with a knife</i>  |
| Ka chika shi da rua   | <i>Fill it with water</i>      |

#### Accompaniment

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Tafi da shi           | <i>Take him away or go with him</i>                                     |
| Ya zo da shi          | <i>He brought him or came with him</i>                                  |
| Sun saidani da kelowi | <i>They sold me to the Kelowi, i.e., they traded me with the Kelowi</i> |

Possession (*see also* under auxiliary verb)

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Suna da bindiga                       | <i>They have a gun</i>                          |
| Ba mu da abinchi                      | <i>We have no food</i>                          |
| Ina da shi <i>and</i> Ni ke da shi    | <i>I have it</i>                                |
| En ba ka da da, ba ka da fari-n-chiki | <i>If you have no son you have no happiness</i> |
| Ina da kafa (idiomatic)               | <i>I have a (bad) leg</i>                       |

#### Manner

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Tafo da gudu      | <i>Come quickly, i.e., come running</i> |
| Da mi akanyi su ? | <i>Of what are they made ?</i>          |

#### Miscellaneous other Examples

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Ta fada mani da Hausa             | <i>She told me in Hausa</i>                             |
| Mine da Engliz ?                  | <i>What is it in English ?</i>                          |
| Na gaji da sukua bisa rakumi      | <i>I was tired of riding on the camel</i>               |
| Ka yi hankali da dunia            | <i>Be careful of the world</i>                          |
| Suna fada da mutane chiki-n-kasua | <i>They were fighting with the people in the market</i> |
| Ka gai mani da ubanka             | <i>Salute your father for me</i>                        |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Da dadi-n-chi                            | <i>Nice to eat</i>   |
| Sun kira ni da sunana, or, sun yi kirana | <i>They called me by my name</i>   |
| Sai da nono-n-mache anasayensa           | <i>Only for the breast of a woman is it to be sold</i>                                 |
| Da babu wawa gara da wawa (proverb)      | <i>Rather than to be without (even) a fool, it is better to have a fool (with you)</i> |
| Ya che da shi                            | <i>He said to him</i>  |
| Na lura da halinka                       | <i>I will look into your character</i>   |
| Ku yi kama da sariki                     | <i>You are just like the king</i>  |
| Ya komo da baya                          | <i>He returned back</i>  |
| Ban sani da guba a chiki ba              | <i>I did not know that there was "guba" poison in it</i>                               |
| Ka yi murna da gani-n-ubanka ?           | <i>Are you pleased to see your father ?</i>  |
| Kare ka mutu da haushi-n-kura (proverb)  | <i>Dog, you will die of hatred to the hyæna</i>  |
| Ina murna da ganinka                     | <i>I am pleased to see you</i>   |

*Da* is used instead of *daga*

|                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Kudu da Kukawa             | <i>South of Kukawa</i>                |
| Gabas da rua sunansa Shari | <i>East of the river called Shari</i> |

*Da* is used in comparative statements

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Yao mun fi na jia da biu  | <i>To-day we have (done) more (than) [of] yesterday by two</i> |
| Nasa ya fi nawa da shidda | <i>His exceeds mine by six</i>                                 |
| Ya fini da keao           | <i>He was more beautiful than I</i>                            |
| Na fiso wannan da wannan  | <i>I prefer this to that</i>                                   |

"Da" is used with nouns to make adjectives and adverbs, as—

Da hankali      *careful or carefully*

*Ga*, to, etc.

It is found in company with other prepositions, as "bisa ga," "baya ga," etc.

Motion

Sun tafi ga wani gari      *They went to another town*

Simple Dative

Ya fadi ga sariki      *He said to the chief*  
 Ya fadi ga shi      *He said to him. (More usual—"ma")*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ga maidauka - n - kaya tafia a hankali ta fi dadi | <i>To the carrier to travel slowly is more pleasant</i>    |
| Ya zama sanane ga duka - n - mazamna a Kuddus     | <i>It became known to all the inhabitants of Jerusalem</i> |

“ Ga ” omitted

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Tafi ka fada Allah | <i>Go and tell God</i> |
|--------------------|------------------------|

On, at

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ga rana aljima   | <i>On Friday</i>   |
| Ya che, ga chiki-n-gulbi   | <i>She said, in the river</i>  |
| Gulbi-n-nan shi kan kaffe ga rani  | <i>This river generally dries up in dry season</i>   |
| Yana (or shina) da karifi ga duka  | <i>He is stronger than all</i>   |
| Doki shina tsaye ga hainya   | <i>The horse is standing in the road</i>   |
| En mun issa ga wani wuri enda akoi chiawa mu kan yenka mu dora ga baya-n- rakuma | <i>When we came to some place where there was grass, we used to cut it and tie it on our camels' backs</i> |
| Ba mu dade ba ga gari nan  | <i>We did not delay at that town</i>   |

Of

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Ga mi ?                       | <i>Of what ?</i>                  |
| Ga hakarikari na jiki-n-Adamu | <i>Of the ribs of Adam's body</i> |
| Wache ga chikinmu ?           | <i>Which of us (f.) ?</i>         |

Purpose

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Mata sunka tafi rijia ga dauka-n-rua | <i>The women have gone to the well to draw water</i> |
| Muka yi shiri ga zua Gushiba         | <i>We made ready to go to Gushiba</i>                |

By

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Na ishe shaifu Usman asoye ga Filani | <i>I met the Sheikh Othman beloved of the Fulas</i> |
|--------------------------------------|---|

From

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Wannan na ji ga yaro da shina ji magana-m-Bornu | <i>I heard this from the boy that speaks Bornuese</i> |
|---|---|

The preposition is omitted when the name of a town is mentioned and in a few other cases—

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ya tafi Kano  | <i>He went to Kano</i>                |
| Tafi gida     | <i>Go home</i>                        |
| Ya tafi gari  | <i>He has gone to the town</i>        |
| Ya komo kasua | <i>He has come back to the market</i> |

*Gare*

Only used before pronouns

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Tafi gareshi | <i>Go to him</i> |
| Daga garesu  | <i>From them</i> |
| Kusa gareku  | <i>Near you</i>  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Mutume-n-nan fari-n-jiki gare-i           | <i>This man is popular</i>                                 |
| Su saye su gareku                         | <i>They buy them from you</i>                              |
| Bature nan, shi ne za-abashieka<br>garesa | <i>This is the white man to whom you<br/>will be given</i> |

*Har*, to (see also adverbs)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na sa mutume-n-nan aboki-n-<br>tafia - r - ku, shi kai ku har<br>birni-n-Kano lafia | <i>I appoint this man your travelling<br/>companion, he will take you as<br/>far as the city of Kano in safety</i> |
|---|--|

NOTE — “*Birni Kano*” is also found, the two nouns being in apposition.*Ma*, to, for“*Ma*” may become “*mi*” or “*mu*” for euphony (S)

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Ya fada mani                            | <i>He said to me</i>                |
| Ya fada maka (m.); maki or<br>miki (f.) | <i>He said to you</i>               |
| Ya fada masa, mashi, mishi, mai         | <i>He said to him</i>               |
| Ya fada mata                            | <i>He said to her</i>               |
| Ya fada mamu, mumu, muna                | <i>He said to us</i>                |
| Ya fada maku, muku                      | <i>He said to you</i>               |
| Ya fada masu, musu                      | <i>He said to them</i>              |
| Ya fada ma sariki                       | <i>He said to the chief</i>         |
| Na gode maka                            | <i>I thank you (formal)</i>         |
| Kawo mani rua en sha                    | <i>Bring me water to drink</i>      |
| Ya gaya mani labari                     | <i>He told me the news</i>          |
| Kada ka fada ma kowa labari             | <i>Do not tell any one the news</i> |

## Meaning “for”

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Ka rike mani                 | <i>Hold (it) for me</i>                          |
| Na dakanta ma sariki         | <i>I waited for the chief</i>                    |
| Ka yi mani shimfida-r-gado   | <i>Spread my bed for me</i>                      |
| Ka gai mani da abokinka      | <i>Salute your friend for me</i>                 |
| Kawo mani doki               | <i>Bring my horse</i>                            |
| Akadaurawa masa dawaki surdi | <i>They were saddling the horses for<br/>him</i> |



## Of

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Bature ya kashe masu mutum<br>tari da doki | <i>The white man killed many of them<br/>with their horses</i> |
| Sun kashe ma Turawa mutane<br>tari         | <i>They killed of the Arabs many men</i>                       |
| Ahikin wani gari anaehe masa<br>Dangagarra | <i>In a certain town called Danga-<br/>garra</i>               |

## From

|                     |                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ta bida masu magani | <i>She sought medicine from them</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|

## Wa

This is probably another form of "ga"; compare "guri" for "wuri."

Only used before nouns, not before personal pronouns, and usually with verbs to tell (K)—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Na dakanta wa sariki                          | <i>I waited for the chief</i>                          |
| Kada ka gaya wa kowa                          | <i>Do not tell anyone</i>                              |
| Ya yenke wa sariki kune                       | <i>He cut off the chief's ear</i>                      |
| Kafa-r-wani ba ta yi wa wani<br>tafia (prov.) | <i>The foot of one man cannot walk<br/>for another</i> |
| Suka saiyo wa dumma nan baiwa                 | <i>They bought a slave for the pumpkin</i>             |

*Na* (n; or d, m for n) (m.)

*Ta* (t; or l, r for t) (f.), and modified often to any letter of the } of  
alphabet which may begin the following word

This preposition is of two genders, and that form is used which agrees with the gender of the first word. If, however, the first word is plural, the masculine form is used.

When the short form is used, which is generally the case, it is enclitic to the first word in enunciation but not in meaning.<sup>1</sup>

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Da-n-sariki (dan sariki) | <i>The chief's son</i>      |
| Ya-l-sariki (S)          | <i>The chief's daughter</i> |
| Ya-r-sariki (K)          | "                           |
| Ya-t-sariki              | "                           |

<sup>1</sup> In ordinary text the "n," etc. is written as part of the first word. This work, however, being a grammar, it is necessary to distinguish it clearly, and so it is joined with hyphens to each word it connects.

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Yaya-n-sariki                   | <i>The chief's children</i>                               |
| Yarinia-t-sariki                | <i>The chief's girl</i>                                   |
| Mata-r-sariki                   | <i>The chief's wife</i>                                   |
| Mata-n-gari                     | <i>The women of the town</i>                              |
| Mata-n-sa (for mata tasa)       | <i>His wife</i>   |
| Aboki-n-tafia-ta                | <i>My travelling companion</i>                            |
| Da-n-uwansa                     | <i>His brother (because "danuwa" is masc.)</i>            |
| Da matansa saura shi daia       | <i>And of his women (wives) there was left one to him</i> |
| Sarari-d-dunia (rare). (Poetic) | <i>The plain of the earth</i>                             |
| Daki-d-dunia (rare). (Poetic)   | <i>The house of the world (=the world)</i>                |
| Wuta-l-kياما. (Poetic)          | <i>The fire of the day of judgment</i>                    |
| Ra-l-kياما. (Poetic)            | <i>The day of judgment</i>                                |

"N" is joined to many nouns to make prepositions, as, "wuri-n," "kai-n," "chiki-n," of which examples are given later.

It is used when adjectives precede the noun, thereby making them in reality nouns.

Baba-l-kaza for kaza baba      *A big fowl*

As "baba" ends in "a" it has to be treated as a feminine word. When, however, the second word is one of importance, especially a person, it seems to have a dominating effect upon the preposition; so—

Baba-n-sariki      *The big chief*  
 Baba-n-rago      *The big ram*

Also—

Sabo-n-wata      *New moon*  
 Shashi-n- garina zani bashi      *I will give him the half of my kingdom*  
 Allah shi baka yawa-n-rai      *May God give you a long life*

"Yawa-r-rai" is also found, and is correct, as "yawa" is a feminine word; it is less frequently heard, however, not being so euphonious.

The long form is used (1) in poetry, (2) when "na" is the first word in the sentence, (3) when a pronoun intervenes, (4) with the cardinal numerals to form the ordinal, (5) for emphasis or clearness, and (6) when the previous word is not a noun—

Namu ne      *It is ours*  
 Na sariki ne      *It is the chief's*

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| A kafata ta hagin ina da kur-kunu     | <i>In my left leg I have a guinea worm</i>                     |
| Na biu (m.), ta-biu (f.)              | <i>The second</i>  |
| Na-baya (m.), ta-baya (f.)            | <i>The last</i>  |
| Na-bisa ya fi na-kasa riba            | <i>The person above has the advantage over the one beneath</i> |
| Mu je kasua ta Zerma                  | <i>We went to the market of Zerma</i>                          |
| Ya wo gaiya ta yaki                   | <i>He made a war camp</i>                                      |
| Ko gida-n-sariki ko na talaka         | <i>Whether it be the house of a chief or of a poor man</i>     |
| Allah ka bani haifua ko ta dumma      | <i>God, grant that I bear something, even a gourd</i>          |
| Ba shi da chin yao, ba shi da na gobe | <i>He has nothing to eat to-day and nothing to-morrow</i>      |

### Compound Nouns

Quasi compound nouns are made with the use of this preposition—

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Kada-n-gari  | <i>Lizard, i.e., crocodile of the town</i> |
| Aboki-n-gaba | <i>Enemy, i.e., friend of the front</i>    |

In the following examples there is rather a different idiom from the English—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ba ni iyansa ba   | <i>I am not equal to the doing of it</i>   |
| Muna iyansu   | <i>We are able to do it</i>  |
| Ba na ji-n-tsoronsa   | <i>I am not afraid of him</i>  |
| En tafi sha-n-rua   | <i>That I may go to drink water</i>  |
| Ka aiko muna wotika kaka suna yi-n-gerdamanka, da kai kana gerdamansu har ka kashe su | <i>You send us a letter (to say) how they dispute with you, and how you also dispute with them until you have convinced them</i> |

The following use of “na” as a substitute for the verb “to be” in English is very idiomatic. In the second example this usage is partly abolished and a reversal made to a verb, with the result that the subject that begins the sentence is replaced by another—

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Hauka-r-kaza amre-n-musuru      | <i>It is madness for a fowl to marry a cat. Lit., Madness of fowl, marriage of cat</i>            |
| Karambani-n-akwia ta gaida kura | <i>It is forward for a goat to greet a hyæna. Lit., Forwardness of goat, she greets the hyæna</i> |

If this proverb were formed like the preceding, for "ta gaida kura" there would be "gaisua-r-kura." "Karam-bani," which begins the sentence, is not continued with, and "ta" pertains to "akwia"—

|           |                                  |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| Gaskianki | <i>You have spoken the truth</i> |
| Kariansu  | <i>They have lied</i>            |

"Na" is sometimes found instead of "shina." See under personal pronouns.

### *Examples of "of" omitted*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Lafia jiki arziki ne                     | <i>Health of the body is prosperity</i>   |
| Laifi baba rowa, laifi yaro kiawa        | <i>The fault of age is meanness, the fault of youth is laziness</i>   |
| Gida biu magani gobara (prov.)           | <i>Two houses are a remedy against fire</i>   |
| Yanmata gidanmu da fari baki.<br>Taberia | <i>The daughters of our house have a white mouth. Fufu-stick. (Riddle.) The fufu-stick being in constant use with pounding corn has always its end whitened</i> |
| Ba su chi abinchi kowa ba                | <i>They do not eat the food of any one</i>  |
| Ku mutane yamma                          | <i>You men of the west</i>  |
| Mutane zina                              | <i>Adulterers</i>   |
| Kwana-mu goma muna tafia                 | <i>We have been travelling ten days</i>   |
| Muka beri kaya-mu                        | <i>We have left our loads</i>   |

This seems to be commonly so when final "a" is long—

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Shi fishe mu aiki mutane zina | <i>He separates us from the work of adulterers</i> |
|-------------------------------|--|

### *Examples of use of Masc. for Fem.*

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Uwansu               | <i>Their mother</i>                      |
| Uwan matansa         | <i>Mother of his wife</i>                |
| Zuchiaansa ya yi biu | <i>He was in doubt</i>                   |
| Dere rigan mugu      | <i>Night is a cloak for the evil man</i> |

It is commonly found that when there is a series of linked nouns, some have the copulative and others stand in apposition, usually alternately—

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Zani gurin dia sariki      | <i>I will go to the place of the daughter of the king</i> |
| Sunan sariki garin Wandara | <i>The name of the chief of the country of Wandara</i>    |

The following is an example of the use of the particle "mai" as a substitute for "na"—

Ta zo kusa da wani gida mai-awaki      *She came near a certain goat's house*

*Sai*, except (*see also* adverbs). Pronounced "se" (say)

Sai wannan      *Only this*  
 Sai lafia      *Only health, i.e., quite well*  
 Shi kua dan sariki nan ba shi da wani chiniki sai sha-n-gia      *And he the chief's son had no other business but to drink beer*

*Don* (K), *domin* (S), *garin* (Zanf). *See also* conjunctions

This preposition takes either a direct object or a sentence in lieu—

Don bawa daia sun yi yaki      *On account of one slave they mad war*  
 Ya ragu don kainsa      *It is diminished of itself*  
 Ya tafo wurina don gaishe ni      *He came to me to salute me (because of saluting me)*  
 Riki karenka don kare-n-wani (prov.)      *Hold your dog on account of the other man's dog*  
 Mahmadu ya dauki kaya guda don kansa      *Mahmadu has taken one load for himself*

#### *Domin*

Na je Kano domi-n-gani-n-abokina      *I went to Kano to see my friend*  
 Domin hakanan      *On account of this*  
 Ya che do-n-mi bai yi aure ba?      *He said why is he not married?*  
     *Because he is a virtuous man*  
 Kuka da na yi domin ganinka      *The cry I made in order to see you*  
 Domin mi?      *What for?*

*Garin* (*see also* interrogative adverbs)

Ya tafi gari gari-n-saye-n-nama      *He went to the town to buy meat*  
 Ya tafi gari-n-yawo      *He has gone to take a walk*

*Zua-r* or *ya zua* (=he is coming) or *zua ga*, to

Sun tafi zua-r-Kano      *They went to Kano*  
 Sun tafi ya zua Kano      *They went to Kano*  
 Muna godia zua ga Allah      *We give thanks to God*  
 Hal ya zua yanzu      *Until now*  
 Na komo zua-r-gidana      *I came back home*

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Ya tafi zua-r-gabas                  | <i>He went east</i>                          |
| Zua-r-mutua-r-Ahmedu ya yi sarki     | <i>On the death of Ahmedu he became King</i> |
| Daga Kano zua-r-Katsina na da nisa ? | <i>Is it far from Kano to Katsina ?</i>      |

In the foregoing the "r" is very commonly omitted after "zua." Its existence is, however, supported by the alternate rendering of "ga."

*Kai-n, kan, on top of*

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Doki shina tsaye kan (or akan) hainya | <i>The horse is standing in the road</i> |
| Muka gamu da shi kai-n-hainya         | <i>We met him in the road</i>            |
| Sa tukunia kain wuta                  | <i>Put the pot on the fire</i>           |

*Joined with other prepositions*

|                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Bisa-r-ka-n-doki for a kai-n-doki | <i>On horseback</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|

*= On the subject of*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Akain mi ku ke zanche ?                                    | <i>What are you talking about ?</i>                                  |
| Manzani - n - Allah suna waazi akan atuba da beri-n-zunufi | <i>The messengers are talking about repentance and forsaking sin</i> |
| Ya sa dan uwansa akain abo-kainsa duka                     | <i>He puts his brother before all his friends</i>                    |
| Ya bani wannan kain alkawali da ya yi mani da              | <i>He gave me this according to a promise he made me long ago</i>    |
| Dan sariki ya yi fada da sariki akan sarauta               | <i>The young chief fought with the chief over the kingdom</i>        |

*Bisa-r, also bisa-n or bisa alone*

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Doki shina tsaye bisa-r-hainya      | <i>The horse is standing in the road</i>                  |
| Yara duka sun tuma bisa-r-kujerinsu | <i>All the boys jumped up on their chairs</i>             |
| Lokachinda anadaukanka bisa kai     | <i>When you are carried on a man's head (as a corpse)</i> |
| Shimfida tufa bisanta               | <i>Spread the cloth on it</i>                             |
| Kana bisana                         | <i>You are on top of me</i>                               |

*With ga*

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Gidansu bis' ga ishi     | <i>Their houses upon posts</i> |
| Ya kwanta bisa ga gadona | <i>He slept on my bed</i>      |

*With other prepositions*

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ya sabko daga bisa-r-kai-n-doki | <i>He got off his horse</i> |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|

Meaning "concerning" or "about"

Bisa-r-zanche-n-nan                      *Concerning this conversation*  
 Mi ka che bisa gareni?                 *What do you say about me?*

=By

Bisa yerda-n-Allah                      *By the will of God*

*Kasa-n, kalkashi-n, under, beneath*

Kada ka sa fitila kalkashi-n-         *Do not put the lamp under the*  
 maida     *table*  
 Ta aje danta kalkashi-n-itache         *She put her son under the tree*  
 Yaro ya fito daga kalkashi-n-         *The boy came out from under the*  
 itache     *tree*  
 Ta tafi har ga kalkashi-n-dusi         *She went even to the bottom of (or*  
    *under) the rock*

*Gaba-n, in front of. ("Gaba" is mostly masculine gender)*

Ya tsaya gabana                             *He stands before me*  
 Ya tsaya agabanka                         *He stands before you*

With other prepositions

Ya tsaya gaba ga kai (or gareka)         *He stands before you*

Note also—

Shina gaba da Allahu                      *He is opposed to God*

*Baya-n, behind, back of*

Also *baya ga, baya gare.* "A" can also be prefixed

*Baya* is mostly masculine by gender

Baya na                                         *Behind me, my back*  
 A bayana                                         *At my back*  
 Bayansa, baya ga shi                         *Behind him or in his absence*  
 Ya tafi bayan gari                             *He went outside the town*  
 Ya tafi bayan gida                             *He has gone to ease himself (a*  
    *polite form)*  
 Baya-n-wannan ba ya kara yi-         *After this he denied no more*  
 n-musu ba  
 Daga baya-n-wannan                         *After this*  
 Karatu Ar'bi ya fi karatu duka.         *Arabic literature is before all*  
    *literature. After Arabic Euro-*  
    *pean is above the Fula. After*  
    *them Hausa is above Bornu*  
    *(literature)*  
 Shi ne gaba gareni da ni ga                 *He is before me and I am behind*  
 bayansa     *him*



*Tsaka-r* and *Tsaka-n*, middle of (mostly masculine)

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Tsaka-n-woje akoi rijia | <i>There is a well in the middle of the yard</i> |
| Tsaka-n-dere            | <i>In the middle of the night</i>                |
| Suka tafo tsaka-r-daji  | <i>They came into the middle of the forest</i>   |

*Tsakani-n*, between

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya zamna tsakaninmu                        | <i>He sat down between us</i>                              |
| Amana ke tsakaninmu da shi                 | <i>There is friendship between him and me</i>              |
| Tsakani - n - dakuna masallachi yana tsaye | <i>Between the houses stands a mosque</i>                  |
| Babu marabi tsakaninsu                     | <i>There is no difference between them</i>                 |
| Kofofi - n - Zaria tsakaninsu da nisa      | <i>There is a long distance between the gates of Zaria</i> |
| Ba shi tsakani gabas da kudu               | <i>He is not between east and south</i>                    |
| Domin babu gaba tsakaninmu da ku           | <i>For there is no enmity between us and you</i>           |
| Tsakani na da ubanka ka sare daga chikinmu | <i>Decide between me and your father</i>                   |

*Chiki-n*, in

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Chiki-n-chikinta                                       | <i>In her belly</i>   |
| A chiki-n-daki   | <i>In the hut or room</i>                                       |
| Chikinsa   | <i>His belly or inside it</i>                                   |
| Chiki-n-wata shawal                                    | <i>In the month Shawal</i>                                      |
| Zani tafia-r-chiki-n-rua                               | <i>I shall walk in the water</i>                                |
| Daia chikinsu  | <i>One of them</i>  |
| Chiki-n-wannan lokachi ka ke mayar wa Israila da mulki | <i>At this season wilt thou restore to Israel their kingdom</i> |

## Joined with other prepositions

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Biu daga chikinmu        | <i>Two of us</i>                 |
| Ta fita daga chiki-n-rua | <i>She came out of the water</i> |
| Ta che, ga chikin gulbi  | <i>She said, In the river</i>    |

## Note the following—

|                    |                                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| Suna chikin dubawa | <i>Whilst they were looking</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|

*Woje-n, shiya-l* (S), beside, outside, towards

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Woje-n-gabas, shiya-l-gabas      | <i>Towards the east</i>      |
| Woje-n-kasa-l-nan                | <i>Towards that land</i>     |
| Ya waiwaisa wojensa (or wurinsa) | <i>He turned towards him</i> |
| Sun tafi wojen Kano              | <i>They went Kano-way</i>    |
| Woje-n-ku                        | <i>With you</i>              |
| Shina daga woje (adv.)           | <i>He is outside</i>         |



|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Woje-n-nan                     | <i>On this side</i>                        |
| Daga woje-n-chan               | <i>On that side</i>                        |
| Ina tafia woje (adv. and noun) | <i>I am walking outside</i>                |
| Woje-n-dama, woje-n-hauni      | <i>On the right side, on the left side</i> |
| Woje-n-dari da ashirin ne      | <i>They were about 120</i>                 |

*Kama-n*, like (see also adverbs). Mostly masculine

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Kama-n-kwana uku ya tambaya mutane | <i>After about three days he asked the men</i> |
| Yaro ya yi kaman uwansa            | <i>The boy is like his mother</i>              |
| Kaman dakin chan                   | <i>Like that house</i>                         |

*Tamka-r*, like. Also *tamka-n*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Sun yi ma sabo-n-malam tamka-n-tsofo-n-malam | <i>They did to the new mallam like the old</i> |
|--|--|

*Kusa-r*, near. Also *kusa-n*. See also *kusa da*

|                        |                                    |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ta kusa mutua da daria | <i>She nearly died of laughter</i> |
| Kusansa                | <i>Near him</i>                    |
| Kusa-n-nan             | <i>Near here</i>                   |

*Wuri-n*, at the place of. Almost invariably used with a person

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Zo wurina                              | <i>Come to me</i>                                    |
| Gudu wurinsa                           | <i>Run to him</i>                                    |
| Na zo wurinka                          | <i>I come to see you</i>                             |
| Abinnan yana wurina                    | <i>The thing is with me</i>                          |
| Ban che laifi yana wurinka             | <i>I did not say that the fault was yours</i>        |
| Alhakinda ka dauka ya komo wurinka     | <i>The sin you committed has returned upon you</i>   |
| Ansa wani wurinsa                      | <i>Another was put in his place</i>                  |
| Ba ya bude ido ba tukuna wuri-n-karatu | <i>He is ignorant as regards religious education</i> |
| Allahu ya bada dunia wuri-n-bature     | <i>God has given the world to the white man</i>      |
| Wanda kuka ji awurina                  | <i>What you heard from me</i>                        |
| Ya koma wuri-n-ubangiji Allah          | <i>He returned to the Lord God</i>                   |
| Ya ji kumia wurin ubangi ji Allah      | <i>He felt ashamed before God</i>                    |
| Na ji labarinka wurin Mahmadu          | <i>I heard of you from Mahmadu</i>                   |

*Gu-n* (K) = *wurin*, which in the northern dialects is sometimes found as "guri"

Mostly used with a person

|                |                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Zo guna        | <i>Come to me</i>                 |
| Gu-n-chan      | <i>Over there</i>                 |
| Gudu gunsa     | <i>Run to him</i>                 |
| A gun fure nan | <i>At the place of the flower</i> |

*Bigiri-n* (K), *Gurbi-n* (Zanf), *Mamaki-n* (S), instead of

Ya tafi Kano bigiri-n-Sokoto      *He went to Kano instead of Sokoto*  
Ba ni rago gurbi-n-akwia      *Give me a sheep instead of a goat*

*Abaki-n*, in exchange for

Ya tafi Kano baki-n-Sokoto      *He went to Kano instead of Sokoto*

*Batu-n*, with reference to

Batu-n-mi ?      *With reference to what ?*

*Kafi-n*, before

Kafi-n-shekara nawa goro shi      *In (before) how many years does*  
ke yin yaya      *the Kola bear*

*Bamda*, different from, apart from

Bam da Allah ba ni tsoro-n-      *Except God I fear nothing*  
komi  
Bam da wannan ba ni da wani      *Except this I have nothing*  
Mi kana so en sawo maka bam      *What do you want me to buy for*  
da shinkafa      *you besides rice*

*Dabara da, daura da*, near to, alongside

Su tsaya daura da juna      *They stand alongside each other*  
Ya tsaya dabranka      *He stands next beyond you*  
Itache-n-nan shina tsaye dabra-      *The tree stands next to that tree*  
n-itache-n-nan  
Sai ga mutum biu daura da su      *But two men were standing by*  
atsaye      *them*

*Gami da*, together with

Derived from "gama," to join, finish.

Ya tube wandonsa gami da shi      *He took off his trousers together*  
with it

*Kusa da, kusa gare*, near to (see also *kusa-r*)

Shina kusana      *He is near me*  
Shina kusa ga ni      *"*  
Shina kusa gareni      *"*  
Shina kusanka      *He is near you*

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Shina kusa ga ka  | <i>He is near you</i> |
| Shina kusa gareka | <i>He is near you</i> |
| Kusa ga gida      | <i>Near the house</i> |

*Tare-da*, together with

Derived from "tara," to assemble

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Ya zo tare da ni | <i>He came with me</i> |
|------------------|------------------------|

*Saba da*, on account of

|                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Na gode masa sabada keauta | <i>I thank him for the present he</i> |
| da ya aiko mani            | <i>sent me</i>                        |
| Domin sabada tsoro         | <i>For fear</i>                       |
| Sabada hakanan             | <i>On account of this</i>             |

*Daga*, from, at, etc.

This preposition is very commonly joined with others.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ya tafo daga Kano                               | <i>He comes from Kano</i>  |
| Ya tafo daga chikin Kano                        | <i>He has come out from Kano</i>   |
| Daga nan  | <i>Here</i>  |
| Daga chan                                       | <i>There</i>   |
| Daga nisa                                       | <i>From afar or far (simply)</i>   |
| Daga Ture                                       | <i>In Europe</i>   |
| Daga garesu                                     | <i>From them</i>   |
| Daia daga chikinsu                              | <i>One of them</i>   |
| Shina binsu daga baya                           | <i>He follows them behind</i>  |
| Ya kubche daga hanuna                           | <i>It slipped from my hand</i>   |
| Ya fito daga chikin gari <i>may be said for</i> | <i>He came from the town</i>   |
| Ya fito gari <i>simply</i>                      |  |
| Zomu ba shi kamuwa daga zamne (prov.)           | <i>A hare is not to be caught from your seat, i.e., unless you get up</i>            |
| Wonga wochika ta fita daga hanu mallam Musa     | <i>This letter is from the hand of Mallam Musa. (A common beginning to a letter)</i> |

NOTE.—"Wuri-n" may be used in the meaning of "from" with verbs of motion. See under "wurin."

## OMISSION OF PREPOSITIONS

In a great many cases certain prepositions are omitted, though they are necessary in English.

*Locality.* At, in

The two nouns are then in apposition—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Na tafi kasua Lokoja da laasar  | <i>I went to the market at Lokoja in the evening</i>  |
| Babu wani sariki dunia  | <i>There is no other king on the earth</i>  |
| ("Sariki dunia" is an expression also meaning king of a big country, "sariki" being chief of a town, market, headman, etc.) |   |
| Ba shi sama   | <i>He is not in heaven</i>  |
| Sun sa barao jaru, ya mutu  | <i>They put the thief in gaol, and he died. (Jaru is probably a corruption of the English "gaol")</i> |
| Yanmata gidanmu kulum wanka. Moda. (Riddle)   | <i>The daughters of our house always wash. A dipper</i>   |
| Garinku, kadan yaro ya yi girima, minene anayi masa   | <i>In your country when a boy grows up, what is done to him</i>                                       |
| Shina Kano  | <i>He is at Kano</i>  |
| Suka kwana jeji   | <i>They slept in the bush</i>   |

*Time**Point of Time*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Kwanakin-nan ban yi girima ba   | <i>In those days I was not grown up</i>                                 |
| Chiwuta nan ba zata worike ba kwana, daia ko kwana bial ba su issa ba | <i>This sickness will not heal in one day, even five are not enough</i> |

*The noun "saura" = remains, may be used.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Saura kwana uku mun tashi or kana mu tashi | <i>In three days more we shall start</i> |
|--|--|

*Period of Time*

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Kwanarmu goma muna tafia | <i>For ten days we have been travelling</i> |
|--------------------------|---|

*Omission of "with"*

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Ina ji-n-haushinsa | <i>I am angry with him</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------------|

*"Without" is rendered by "babu."*

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Ba ka iya sayensa babu kurdi | <i>You cannot buy it without money, lit., You cannot buy it; no money</i> |
|------------------------------|---|

## CHAPTER VIII

### CONJUNCTIONS

NOTE.—*Some conjunctions are often classed as adverbs and vice versa.*

#### CO-ORDINATING

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Amma, amana (not colloquial) | <i>but</i>                                      |
| Da                           | <i>and</i>                                      |
| Da . . . da                  | <i>both . . . and</i>                           |
| Da . . . da                  | <i>had I . . . I should (not)</i>               |
| Dai, de                      | <i>then, indeed</i>                             |
| Fa                           | <i>therefore (about; usually interrogative)</i> |
| Gara, goama, guma            | <i>rather</i>                                   |
| Ko                           | <i>either or even</i>                           |
| Ko . . . ko                  | <i>either, whether . . . or</i>                 |
| Koka                         | <i>as well as, like as</i>                      |
| Kua                          | <i>also</i>                                     |
| Kau, kawa                    | <i>also (not colloquial)</i>                    |
| Kuma                         | <i>again. See under adverbs</i>                 |
| Ma                           | <i>too, likewise</i>                            |

#### SUBORDINATING

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Bamda   | <i>except</i>  |
| Don (S) Domin (K)   | <i>because, in order that. (See also Prepositions)</i> |
| Don kada, don en  | <i>lest</i>  |
| Don wannan, don haka  | <i>for this reason</i>                                 |
| En, idan (S), kan, <sup>1</sup> kam, <sup>1</sup> kadan (K) kur (Z) | <i>if, when</i>  |
| En  | <i>in order to, that</i>                               |
| Inda  | <i>if. Inda . . . da, Had I . . . I should (not)</i>   |
| Gama  | <i>for</i>   |

<sup>1</sup> See also Adverbs of Time.

|                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| Kada (S) kar. (K) | <i>Do not, lest</i>            |
| Koda              | <i>although, when, even if</i> |
| Sabada            | <i>on account of</i>           |
| Sai               | <i>except, and, etc.</i>       |
| Zama              | <i>because</i>                 |

### NOUNS USED (WITH PARTICLES) IN SENSE OF CONJUNCTIONS

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Kama-n-da     | <i>in the same way, as soon as, like as</i> |
| Kwatamshi (S) |   |
| Kama-n-       | <i>like, the same</i> "                     |

#### *Amma*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ina dubensa, amma ban gane shi<br>ba                       | <i>I looked for him but I did not<br/>see him</i>   |
| Da uwata kua tana kuka, amma<br>kanena ba shi sani ba komi | <i>And my mother also was crying<br/>but my younger brother did not<br/>know anything</i> |

#### *Da*

“Da . . . da,” *both . . . and, neither . . . nor* in negative sentences, *whether . . . or*, in conditional sentences.

“Da” connects words as well as sentences—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Rago da akwia                                     | <i>The ram and the she-goat</i>  |
| Ba naku ne da zaku san zamanu                     | <i>It is not for you to know the times</i>                                     |
| Ni tafi ga sariki da ni che masa                  | <i>I shall go to the chief and I shall<br/>say to him</i>                      |
| Da kaka zaka yaki babu fadawa ?                   | <i>And how will you go to war with<br/>no officers ?</i>                       |
| Ta ehe mu biu da ni da barao                      | <i>She said both of us both I and the<br/>thief</i>                            |
| Da ni da shi mu duka muna tafia<br>chiki-n-kaya   | <i>Both I and he were walking on<br/>the thorns</i>                            |
| Ina so mu yi gana da ni da kai                    | <i>I want to have some conversation<br/>with you</i>                           |
| Da ya sha bami, da ya sha barasa,<br>duka daia ne | <i>Whether he drinks palm wine or<br/>he drinks spirit, it is all the same</i> |

“Da” may be omitted in narration—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Mutum ya tashi, ya dauka sanda,<br>ya gudu, ya tafo ga wurin enda<br>machiji shi ke, ya kashe shi | <i>The man arose, he took a stick, he<br/>ran, he came to the place where<br/>the snake was, he killed it</i> |
| Ina chi, ina sha  | <i>I eat and drink</i>  |



|   |   |
|---|---|
| Angaya mani wannan labari, ko<br>gaskia ne, koko tasunia che,<br>oho !            | <i>I was told this news, whether it is<br/>true, or whether it is a tale, I<br/>don't know !</i>                  |
| Suna che ko na mutu<br>Amma ban ji ba ko daia ya mutu,<br>ko, wani ya halbi kibia | <i>They asked if I was dead<br/>But I have not heard if anybody<br/>died or whether any one shot an<br/>arrow</i> |

*Ko* = even, indeed (an intensive)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Na gani ko sariki<br>Ba mu samu ba ko aluransu daia      | <i>I have indeed seen the chief<br/>We did not find even one of their<br/>needles</i>         |
| Ko ni dakaina ina tafia da kafa                          | <i>Even I myself was travelling on<br/>foot</i>   |
| Da babu rairai ko kadan                                  | <i>There was no sand there, not even<br/>a little</i>   |
| Bature ba shi tsoro mutua ko<br>anakasheshi ba i kula ba | <i>The white man does not fear death,<br/>even if he is to be killed he does<br/>not care</i> |
| Ko dā babu daki nan                                      | <i>Formerly there was no house at<br/>all here</i>  |

“*Ko da*” here is distinct from “*koda*,” although

“*Ko*” may be used at the end of a sentence as an interrogative particle—

Mutum ya tafi, ko ? *Did the man go ?*

Here “*ko*” is elliptic for “*ko ba hakka ba*,” or is it not so. “*Ko*” may also be used in the middle of the sentence, even splitting the verb—

A ko nuna maka talauchi ? *Shall poverty be shown you ?*

*Koka*

Na sani sariki-n-Kano koka *I know the chief of Kano as well  
sariki-n-Sokoto as the chief of Sokoto*

*Kua*

Usually found with “*da*,” and. Compare use of “*kuma*.”

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Gobe ubanka shi zo kua                                   | <i>Tomorrow my father will also come</i>                               |
| Audu ya yi sata kua                                      | <i>Audu has also stolen</i>  |
| Ina sonsa da shi kua shina sona                          | <i>I like him and he also likes me</i>                                 |
| Ko kua mu ya-n-Africa muna<br>chi-n-nama dainye          | <i>Even we Africans also eat raw<br/>meat</i>                          |
| Ni zani tafia ga kasua da kai kua<br>zaka tafia ga kasua | <i>I shall go to the market and you<br/>also will go to the market</i> |



*Kuma* (conjunction). *See also* under adverbs

Audu ya yi sata, Mahma ya yi sata kuma *Audu has stolen, Mahma has also stolen*

*Ma*

Enclitic to the word it refers to

Ni ma ina tafia en nema dukia *I too am going in search for riches*  
 Su ma ba su da yaya *They too had no children*

*Bamda*. *See* under Preposition

Bamda Allah ba ni tsoro-n-komi *Except God I fear nothing*

*Don*. *See also* under Preposition

Ya yi kuka don mun buga shi *He howled because we beat him*  
 Kira shi don en biya shi *Call him so that I may pay him*  
 Don ba ka ji ba *Because you do not understand*  
 Na sani Hausa kwarai don ni *I know Hausa correctly because I*  
 da-n-Tuntume ne *am a native of Tuntume*  
 Suna zo bisa dawaki don su *They are coming on horses to*  
 kamaku *catch you*  
 Yao na tafi ga makaranta don en *I went to school to-day to see what*  
 gani abinda zasu goda ga yan *they were going to show to the*  
 makaranta *school children*  
 Ya bani duka don wannan na ya *They gave me all therefore I was*  
 murna *glad*  
 Don kada su gani wuta da dere *Lest they should see the fire by*  
 night

*En, idan, kadan*, etc.

En ya yi karia abugeshi *If he lies he will be beaten*  
 Asamu en anjima kadan *They will be got if you wait a little*  
 Ya kamata mutum zashi tafia shi *It behoves a man who is going a*  
 nema guzuri en shina yi hankali *journey to lay in provisions if he*  
 is wise  
 En ba ka da kurdi ba ka da gaskia *If you have no money you have no*  
 truth, i.e., only a rich man is *listened to*  
 Idan kana son sarota em ba ka *If you want the kingdom I will*  
 give it you  
 Kadan ban che ba karia *If I am not telling a lie*  
 Kadan wanga mutum ya yi gudu *If this man runs he will fall down*  
 shi fadi  
 Kadan anarua ba zamu tafia ba *If it rains we will not go*  
 Kadan na tafi garesa shi fada *If I go to him he will tell me the*  
 mani gaskia *truth*  
 Kan na sakeki *If I set you free*  
 Kan na yi muku rana, kada ku yi *If I make day for you, do not*  
 mini dere (prov.) *make night for me*

"If" understood from context

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Akoi laya, kana sa ta ga wuya,<br>kana yi sata babu maigani | <i>There is a charm, (if) you hang it<br/>on your neck, you can steal and<br/>no one will see you</i> |
|---|---|

*En*=in order to, that

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya tambaye en su Fulani ne<br>Ta tafi gari en dauka kashia | <i>He went to ask if they were Fulanis<br/>She went to the town to take her pay</i> |
|--|---|

*Inda . . . da*

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Inda ba haka ba, da na gaya<br>maka | <i>It it were not so I should have<br/>told you</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---|

*Gama*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ban so tafi ba gama ban ganshi<br>ba tukuna | <i>I do not want to go for I have not<br/>seen him yet</i> |
|---|--|

*Kada*=because not. Compare *don*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Kada ka tafi  | <i>Do not go</i>   |
| Kada su tafi  | <i>Let them not go</i>   |
| Gudu maza kada shi wucheka  | <i>Run quickly lest he pass you</i>  |
| Na tambaye su domi mutane<br>kada su tafi                               | <i>I asked him why the men should<br/>not go</i>   |
| Ya aiko mani wata budurua kada<br>en tafi har ya-n-makaranta su<br>fita | <i>He sent to me a certain girl (to<br/>say) that I should not go until<br/>the school children came out</i> |

*Koda*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Koda shi ke yaro shina da karifi<br>kwarai                      | <i>Although he is a boy he is very<br/>strong</i>                           |
| Koda ya mutu shi yi rai   | <i>Even if he dies he shall live</i>  |
| Koenna ka tafi Allah shinana<br>tari da kai koda dere koda rana | <i>Wherever you go God is there with<br/>you whether by night or by day</i> |

*Sabada*

This preposition is used with a noun or with "wannan," and the phrase may be translated by such a conjunction as "because"—

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Ni kua ina yi-n-kuka sabada<br>gajia | <i>I too cried because I was tired.<br/>Lit., on account of fatigue</i> |
|--------------------------------------|---|

Or "haka" may be used.—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ba ni ba ta kurdi sabada haka ta<br>tafi | <i>I did not give her money so she<br/>went</i> |
|--|---|



## CHAPTER IX

### INTERJECTIONS

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| A                | <i>oh</i>  |
| Aá               | exclamation of astonishment. It is in a different tone from aa = <i>no</i> , which has a low, falling tone         |
| Af, Ap           | <i>oh</i> ; an exclamation of recollection   |
| Aha              | exclamation of satisfaction  |
| Ai               | <i>ah</i>  |
| Arr (K), irr (S) | <i>be off</i>  |
| Ara              | <i>go on</i>   |
| Ashe             | <i>truly</i>   |
| Asha, hashá      | an exclamation of pain or grief  |
| Aya              | <i>up ! or it does not matter</i>  |
| Gasa             | expression of disgust, surprise  |
| Hakika           | <i>true !</i>  |
| Habba, hubba     | expression of astonishment or indignation  |
| Kai              | <i>hi ! you !</i>  |
| Kaito, kaicho    | alas   |
| Ko               | exclamation of surprise  |
| Labada           | <i>true !</i>  |
| Madillá          | exclamation of joy, also used as a reply salutation, or on receiving an acceptable gift                            |
| Oho              | <i>it does not concern me.</i> (See example under conjunction "ko")  |
| Sanu             | <i>softly</i> , also a salutation. An expression of sympathy   |
| To               | <i>all right.</i> Used on receiving an order and signifying acceptance. Also as an informal expression of - thanks |
| Ungo             | <i>take it !</i>   |
| Us               | used in driving sheep and donkeys  |
| Tir              | <i>alas.</i> An expression of sympathy   |
| Wai              | exclamation of doubt, hesitation   |
| Ya               | <i>O.</i> Arabic   |
| Yowa (K)         | <i>yes, all right</i>  |

*Examples*

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A mugum bara !           | <i>Ah bad servant !</i>     |
| Kai yaro                 | <i>You boy !</i>            |
| Kai !                    | <i>You</i>                  |
| Kai wadanan yara !       | <i>You boys !</i>           |
| Aya mu tafi !            | <i>Up ! let us go !</i>     |
| Ya sidi ! Ya ku mutane ! | <i>O sir ! You, O men !</i> |
| Ungo mashi-n-nan.        | <i>Take this spear</i>      |

## CHAPTER X

### SYNTAX

#### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES

##### THE SUBJECT

The subject may be composed as follows:—

- i. pronoun, personal.
- ii. noun or other substantive + personal pronoun (never noun alone).
- iii. demonstrative + noun + personal pronoun; or, noun + demonstrative + personal pronoun.
- iv. noun + possessive pronoun + personal pronoun.
- v. noun + adjective or numeral + personal pronoun.
- vi. two nouns in apposition + personal pronoun.
- vii. two nouns, one in genitive case + personal pronoun.
- viii. infinitive + personal pronoun.
- ix. relative sentence + personal pronoun.

From this list it can be seen that, whatever the nature of the subject, its predicate must be preceded by a personal pronoun. The only cases in which its omission is permissible are in poetry and proverbs.

##### *Examples*

|      |  |   |                      |
|------|--|---|----------------------|
| i    | Ya tafi                                    | } | <i>He went</i>       |
| ii   | Mutum ya tafi                              |   | <i>The man went</i>  |
| iii. | Wannan mutum ya tafi<br>Mutume-nan ya tafi |   | <i>This man went</i> |

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| iv. Dansa ya tafi                | <i>His son went</i>                        |
| v. Yaro karami ya tafi           | <i>The small boy went</i>                  |
| Yara uku sun zo                  | <i>Three boys have come</i>                |
| vi. Yaro, dana, ya tafi          | <i>The boy, my son, went</i>               |
| vii. Da-n-mutum ya tafi          | <i>The man's son went</i>                  |
| viii. Dauka-n-yaro ba da wuya ba | <i>To carry the boy is not difficult</i>   |
| ix. Mutum da ya zo jia ya tafi   | <i>The man who came yesterday has gone</i> |

### *Simple Subject*

The subject need not necessarily be a noun; other substantives or a substantival phrase may be substituted—

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Na-baya ya kuka           | <i>The one behind howled</i>                  |
| Mai-doka-n-kaya ya zo     | <i>The man to carry the load has come</i>     |
| Bature mai-ji Hausa ya zo | <i>The white man who knows Hausa has come</i> |

### *Compound Subject*

The compound subject consists of one or more simple subjects, to all of which one predicate belongs—

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Mutume da mache da yaro sunka tafi | <i>The man the woman and the boy went</i> |
|------------------------------------|---|

## THE PREDICATE

The predicate may be simple or compound.

### *The Simple Predicate*

The simple predicate may consist of—

- i. a simple verb.
- ii. auxiliary verb.
- iii. or, may be understood.

### *Examples*

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| i. Aiki ya kare    | <i>The work is finished</i>                  |
| ii. Yaro karami ne | <i>The boy is small or it is a small boy</i> |

iii. (a) With "mai"—

Gari mainesa

*The town is far*

(b) With the pronoun compounded with "na"—

Shina baya

*He is behind*

(c) With "da," with (the substitute for "have")—

Aiki da wuya

*The work is hard*

These predicates may be expanded in various ways with attributes—

i.

Aiki ya kare duka

*The work is all finished*

Ya ji sarai

*He understands perfectly*

ii.

Miji-n-ta shi ne maisaida-n-zinaria

*Her husband is a seller of gold*

iii.

Yaro ba shi da karifi

*The boy is not strong*

### *The Compound Predicate*

A compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates belonging to the same subject. The personal pronoun has to be repeated with each—

Yaro ya gudu ya fadi chiki-n-  
rami

*The boy ran and fell into the hole*

### *Special Notes on the Predicate*

i.

By idiomatic usage the number of the predicate does not agree with that of the subject.

A singular noun will take a plural predicate when the former has a collective sense—

Kasua duka sun hauka

*The whole market went mad drunk*

Dokinsa dubu ishirin da biar

*His cavalry was 25,000 men*

Mutum duka ya gudu

*They have all run away*

Wani mutane yatafi garin Bauchi  
taritari

*Some men went to the Bauchi  
country—a great many*



Also two subjects may have a singular predicate—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Kowa ya rinaka yaro da baba<br>kafiri da Musulmi duk ya<br>zageka | <i>Every one despises you, boy and<br/>grown-up, heathen and Musul-<br/>man, all revile you</i>       |
| Ban ji ba ban gani ba ta rabaka<br>da zaure-n-tara (proverb)      | <i>I did not hear I did not see<br/>keeps you out of the hall of<br/>fines, i.e., proves an alibi</i> |

In connection with these the following sentences may be noticed—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya tafi gari baba ya yi aiki da su         | <i>He went to a big town he made<br/>war on it (them)</i>   |
| Bature ya kashe masu mutum<br>tari da doki | <i>The white man killed of them many<br/>men and horses</i> |

## ii.

Verbs of saying, thinking, seeing, etc., generally introduce direct speech and are not followed by any conjunctions—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Na sani ka ba ni abinda ni ke so             | <i>I know (that) you will give me<br/>what I want</i>           |
| Ina tamaha shina da rai har yanzu            | <i>I think he is still alive</i>                                |
| Da muka zamna na ji suna so-n-<br>tafia yaki | <i>When we halted I heard that they<br/>wanted to go to war</i> |
| Da muna gani suna gudu                       | <i>As we looked they ran off</i>                                |

## iii.

There are a few instances in which the predicate precedes the subject. The verbs are ‘akwoi,’ ‘za,’ ‘je,’ ‘ya’ (see under the Verb)—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Akwoi mutane dayawa a chiki-n-<br>gida | <i>There are many people in the<br/>house</i> |
| Akoi Allah                             | <i>There is a God</i>                         |
| Akwoisu                                | <i>There are</i>                              |
| Zamu gida                              | <i>We will go home</i>                        |
| Gobe zaka Kano                         | <i>Tomorrow you will go to Kano</i>           |
| Jeku !                                 | <i>Be off !</i>                               |
| Yaka !                                 | <i>Come !</i>                                 |

## THE OBJECT

The object is of two kinds—

- i. Direct.
- ii. Indirect.

The nature of the object is the same as that of the subject.

*Direct Object*

The following are examples of the direct object following the classification of the subject—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| i. Mutum ya buge shi<br>Na ba wani       | <i>The man beat him<br/>I gave (it) (to) another</i>             |
| ii. Mutum ya buga yaro                   | <i>The man beat the boy</i>                                      |
| iii. Mutum ya buga wannan }<br>yaro      | <i>The man beat this boy</i>                                     |
| Mutum ya buga yaro nan }                 |  |
| iv. Mutum ya buga yaronsa                | <i>The man beat his boy</i>                                      |
| v. Mutum ya buga yaro mugu               | <i>The man beat the bad boy</i>                                  |
| Mutum ya buga yara uku                   | <i>The man beat three boys</i>                                   |
| vi. Mutum ya buga yaro dansa             | <i>The man beat the boy his son</i>                              |
| vii. Mutum ya buga da-n-uwansa           | <i>The man beat the son of his<br/>mother, i.e., his brother</i> |
| viii. Mutum ya tafi dauka-n-kaya         | <i>The man has gone to take his load</i>                         |
| ix. Mutum ya buga wanda ya<br>dauki kaya | <i>The man beat him who carried the<br/>load</i>                 |
| Don ba ka samu ba ya fi<br>wannan        | <i>Because you cannot find better<br/>than this</i>              |

*Example of Compound Direct Object*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Mutum ya buga yaro da yarinia<br>miagu | <i>The man beat the bad boy and<br/>girl</i> |
|--|--|

In Hausa a direct object in the form of an objective phrase is used where in English a subordinate sentence is found—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Allah shi sake taramu da lafia                 | <i>May God grant we meet in health,<br/>lit., May God bring about "our<br/>meeting in health"</i> |
| Ya gani anashiga gida-n-Muham-<br>madu da bame | <i>He saw them enter the house of<br/>Mohammed with palm wine</i>                                 |

NOTE.—If "anashiga" is treated as the equivalent of "suna shiga" the verbal aspect becomes more prominent than the substantival.

In the following example a verb although treated as a noun yet takes a direct object. It must, however, be observed that the direct object begins the sentence as an interrogation, and the rest of the sentence in following loses its strictly grammatical sequence—

Mi ki ka zo gari-n-nema ?                      *What have you come to look for ?*

### *Double Object*

Some verbs take two direct objects, one of the person the other of the thing—

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Sariki ya ba mu shanu biu          | <i>The chief gave us two cows</i>          |
| Ba ina tamaha ba shi ba ni abinda  | <i>I do not think he will give me what</i> |
| ni ke so                           | <i>I want</i>                              |
| Anaba kowa nasa                    | <i>Every one was given his share</i>       |
| Shi ya gode Allah don bai haliche- | <i>He thanks God because he has not</i>    |
| shi karre ba                       | <i>created him a dog</i>                   |
| Da-n-zaki ya dauka dan mutum       | <i>The lion's child took the human</i>     |
| aboki                              | <i>child for his friend</i>                |
| Ya daura dokinsa surdi             | <i>He saddled his horse</i>                |
| Lokachinda anazuba maka kasa       | <i>When they pour earth upon you</i>       |
| bisa kai                           | <i>(i.e., bury you)</i>                    |

### *Example of Nouns in Apposition*

Ya hau dokinsa zaki                      *He mounted his horse—a lion*

### *Indirect Object*

This is very varied in its nature.

It usually follows the predicate—

Ya tafi ga gida-n-maimagani                      *He went to the house of the*  
*medicine man*

Or it may stand first—

Da sanda na buge shi                      *With a stick I beat him*  
Wanene ka ke kira biri                      *Whom are you calling a monkey ?*

When there are both direct and indirect objects the indirect stands first—

Ta bida masu magani                      *She sought medicine from them*  
Wani ya kawo ma sariki labari                      *Some one brought the news to the*  
*chief*

Some verbs take “da” with the indirect object—

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Na gaji da sukua bisa rakumi | <i>I was tired of riding on the camel</i> |
| Ta tuna da mijinta           | <i>She remembered her husband</i>         |
| Ta mutu da yungwa            | <i>She died of hunger</i>                 |
| Ni ban yirda ba da shi       | <i>I do not believe in him</i>            |

### NATURE OF SENTENCES

Sentences are—

1. Affirmative.
2. Negative.
3. Interrogative.

The affirmative sentence is a simple statement in any mood or tense. The negative sentence is formed from the affirmative sentence by the addition of “ba . . . ba” before and after the verb. (*See under adverb.*)

#### *Affirmative*

Yaro nan shi ke karami  
Yaro nan shina karami  
Yaro nan shina da wayo

#### *Negative*

Yaro nan ba shi ke karami ba  
Yaro nan ba shi karami ba  
Yaro nan ba shi da wayo

*English.*—This boy is small ; This boy is cunning, etc.

In sentences containing a command, if direct the subject pronoun may be omitted in the singular, but not in the plural—

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Tafi or ka tafi | <i>Go</i>            |
| Ku tafi         | <i>Go (pl.)</i>      |
| Ga shi          | <i>See him</i>       |
| Ba ni rua       | <i>Give me water</i> |

Inverted subjects are found in “Yaka,” *come* ; “Jeka,” *go* ; “Jeku,” *go (pl.)*—

#### *Other Examples*

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Ta che mata, ki kunchesu      | <i>She said to her loose them</i>  |
| Ban sani ba ; fada mani en ji | <i>I do not know, tell me about it,<br/>lit., so that I may understand</i> |

*Interrogative Sentences*

Interrogative sentences are formed in three ways—

1. Change of tone in an affirmative sentence.
2. With interrogative pronouns.
3. With interrogative adverbs, such as “ko,” for indirect questions especially; “ba?” not? “Fa?” then? “De?” indeed?

## 1

|                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Ni ne ?                         | <i>Is it I ?</i>                    |
| Kai ka ke yi mani magana haka ? | <i>Do you speak so to me ?</i>      |
| Ka gani abin-nan ?              | <i>Have you seen this thing ?</i>   |
| Akoi rua chiki-n-rjia ?         | <i>Is there water in the well ?</i> |

## 2

|                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Wanene ka ke kira biri ? | <i>Whom are you calling a monkey</i> |
| Mi zaka yi da shi ?      | <i>What will you do with him ?</i>   |

3 *Adverbs*

|                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Kurdinsa nawa ?    | <i>How much is it ?</i>          |
| Enna ubanka ?      | <i>Where is your father ?</i>    |
| Yaushe zaka komo ? | <i>When will you come back ?</i> |

*Ko*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya tambaye shi ko shi zo ko ba shi zo ba | <i>He asked him if he was coming or not</i>   |
| Ta che ko daganan rua Madina shi ke ?    | <i>She said, is this the water of Madina here ?</i>   |
| Na tafo ko nan ne rua Madina             | <i>I came to see whether this is the water of Madina</i>  |
| Ko ni ne ?                               | <i>Or is it I ?</i>   |
| Ko ba haka ba ?                          | <i>Or is it not so ? (Often used after another question when a negative answer is possible)</i> |

*Ba ?*

|            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| Ka ji ba ? | <i>Did you not hear ?</i> |
| Ni ne ba ? | <i>Is it not I ?</i>      |

*Fa ?*

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Shi fa ?                             | <i>What about him ?</i>   |
| Ansa kowa aikinsa, shi yaro nan fa ? | <i>Every one has been given his work, but what about this boy ?</i>   |
| Amba kanena rabonsa, ni de ?         | <i>My younger brother has been given his portion, what about me ?</i> |
| Ba zaabani ba ?                      | <i>Shall I not be given any ?</i>                                     |

*Compound Sentences*

Compound sentences are of two kinds—co-ordinate and subordinate.

*Co-ordinate*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Kurichia ta zaka, tana yi-n-kuka,<br>tana chewa ga mache—yi kun-<br>unki ki sha | <i>The dove came, she was crying out,<br/>she was saying to the woman—<br/>make your gruel, drink it</i> |
| Sunka tafi ga baki-n-rijia, ya che<br>masu . . .                                | <i>They went to the mouth of the well,<br/>(and) he said to them . . .</i>                               |
| Amma mu ba mu iyawa mu yi<br>aiki   | <i>But we, we cannot work</i>  |
| Ba ni ne zan yi shi ba ?  | <i>Is it not for me to do it ?</i>   |

*Subordinate*

## Subordinate sentence first—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Kadan ka bani kurdi-n-nan nī<br>baka tagia                                | <i>If you give me the money I shall<br/>give you the cap</i>                                |
| Kadan na tafi, kadan ka rufe<br>kofa, kadan wani ya zaka, kada<br>ka bude | <i>When I have gone, when you have<br/>shut the door, if any one comes,<br/>do not open</i> |

## Subordinate sentence last—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Rairai ya shiga ga idanumu don<br>hiska ta busa da karifi | <i>The sand goes into our eyes<br/>because the wind blew strong</i> |
|---|---|

## CHAPTER XI

### COMMON IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

#### SALUTATIONS

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. Sanu sanu          | <i>How do you do.</i> Lit., <i>Softly</i>                            |
| 2. Sanu ka dai (de)   | <i>How do you do</i>   |
| 3. Kana lafia ?       | <i>Are you well ?</i>  |
| 4. Lafia lau          | <i>Quite well</i>  |
| 5. Madillá            | <i>Thanks be to God</i>  |
| 6. Madillá (Arabie)   |  |
| 1. Sanu da aiki       | Said when meeting a man at work                                      |
| 1. Sanu da gajia      | Said when meeting a man tired  |
| 1. Sanu da zua        | Said when meeting a man coming                                       |
| 2. Sanu ka dai (de)   | <i>How do you do ?</i>   |
| Sanuku                | Said when meeting several persons, and also in reply                 |
| Sanunka               | <i>How do you do ?</i> Lit., <i>Your "sanu"</i>                      |
| Sanunka da kaya       | Said when meeting a man with a load                                  |
| 1. Ka kwana lafia ?   | <i>Have you slept well ?</i>   |
| 2. Lafia ; Madillá    | <i>Very well, thanks</i> (Madillá = <i>What has God shown ?</i> )    |
| 1. Kana lafia ?       | <i>Are you well ?</i>  |
| 2. Lafia lau, na godi | <i>Quite well, I thank (you)</i>                                     |
| 1. Analafia ?         | <i>Are you well ?</i>  |
| 2. Muna lafia         | <i>We are well</i>   |
| 1. Enna gajia ?       | <i>I hope you are not tired.</i> Lit., <i>Where is the fatigue ?</i> |
| 2. Babu gajia         | <i>Not at all tired</i>  |
| 2. Gajia da sauki     |  |
| 1. Enna gida ?        | <i>How are all at home ?</i>   |
| 1. Kaka gida ? *      |  |
| 2. Lafia lau          | <i>Quite well</i>  |

\* NOTE.— *It is impolite to say, How is your wife ?*

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 3. Da iyali suna lafia ?      | <i>And are all the family well ?</i>           |
| 4. Lafia lau, muna lafia      | <i>Quite well, we are all well</i>             |
| 1. Enna labari ?              | <i>What is the news ?</i>                      |
| 2. Sai lafia                  | <i>It is good. The invariable formal reply</i> |
| 1. Maraba, maraba (Arabic)    | <i>Used after long absence</i>                 |
| 2. Sanu, sanu madilla         | <i>Thank you</i>                               |
| 1. Maraba da zua              | <i>Welcome</i>                                 |
| 2. Sanu                       | <i>Softly, i.e., thank you</i>                 |
| 1. Enna zamnan gari ?         | <i>How is your stay in the town ?</i>          |
| 2. Sai alheri                 | <i>It is going well, prosperous</i>            |
| 1. Marhabi, marhabi (Arabic)  | <i>Salutation on returning from a journey</i>  |
| 2. Sanu, madilla              | <i>I am well, thank you</i>                    |
| 1. Albarka                    | <i>Welcome</i>                                 |
| 2. Albarka de                 | <i>Thank you for your welcome</i>              |
| 1. Madillá                    | <i>Praise be to God</i>                        |
| 2. Alhumdillilahi (Arabic) }  | <i>Praise be to God</i>                        |
| 1. Salaam alaikum (Arabic)    | <i>Peace be with you</i>                       |
| 2. Alaikum salaam             | <i>With you be peace</i>                       |
| 1. Berka (for albarka)        | <i>How do you do</i>                           |
| 2. Berka da zua               | <i>Welcome</i>                                 |
| Agaisheka                     | <i>You are saluted. How do you do</i>          |
| Ingoya (ingweya)              | <i>Reply salutation to an important person</i> |
| Sai gobe                      | <i>Good-bye till to-morrow</i>                 |
| Sai wata rana                 | <i>Good-bye till another day</i>               |
| Sai anjima                    | <i>Good-bye for a short time</i>               |
| Allah shi dade da ranka       | <i>May God give you long life (to a chief)</i> |
| Gafara !                      | <i>I beg your pardon</i>                       |
| Gafara dai !                  |  |
| Kaka ka ji da sainyi ?        | <i>How do you feel this cold weather ?</i>     |
| Lafia, sainyi da godia        | <i>Quite well in spite of the cold</i>         |
| Kaka ka kara ji da jiki ? Na  | <i>How are you feeling ? I am</i>              |
| ji sauki (K and Z)            | <i>feeling better</i>                          |
| Allah shi kara maka sauki,    | <i>May God increase your health,</i>           |
| Amin                          | <i>Amen</i>                                    |
| Na ji dama. Na samu sauki     | <i>I feel better or am well again</i>          |
| (Zar)                         |  |
| Allah shi anfana-shi (or -ta) | <i>May God prosper it (on birth of</i>         |
| Allah shi keauta              | <i>a child)</i>                                |
| Ka gaishe shi da yini         | <i>Say good-night to him</i>                   |
| Gai mini da ubanka            | <i>Salute your father for me</i>               |
| Sai ka komo                   | <i>Good-bye till you come again</i>            |



## NAMES OF SEASONS, MONTHS, DAYS, AND HOURS

*Seasons*

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Funturu, or Lokachin dari | <i>Cold season, the season of the Harmattan — December and January</i> |
| Rani                      | <i>Hot season—March</i>  |
| Basara                    | <i>Hottest part of the hot season; tornado season — April and May</i>  |
| Damara                    | <i>Wet season—June to August</i>                                       |
| Agajere                   | <i>Hot season after rain—September, October</i>                        |
| Kaka                      | <i>Harvest season—October, November</i>                                |

*Months*

These are the Arabic months, with the names more or less corrupt—

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Moharam                           |                                   |
| Safar                             |                                   |
| Rabiu lauwal                      |                                   |
| Rabiu lahir                       |                                   |
| Jimada lula                       |                                   |
| Jimada luhura                     |                                   |
| Rajab                             |                                   |
| Jaaban                            |                                   |
| Ramadan, ramalan, or wata-n-azumi | <i>The fast month</i>             |
| Shauwal, wata-n-karama-n-salla    | <i>Month of the little prayer</i> |
| Zulkiida                          |                                   |
| Zulhaji, wata-n-baba-n-salla      | <i>Month of the big prayer</i>    |

The corresponding months in the Julian calendar vary from year to year.

*Days of the Week*

|                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Ran'lahadi          | <i>Sunday</i>    |
| Ran'latini          | <i>Monday</i>    |
| Ran'talata          | <i>Tuesday</i>   |
| Ran'laraba          | <i>Wednesday</i> |
| Ran'alhamis         | <i>Thursday</i>  |
| Ran'aljimua, aljima | <i>Friday</i>    |
| Ran'assabit         | <i>Saturday</i>  |

*Hours of the Day*

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Jijifi             | <i>First sign of dawn</i>              |
| Kiran salla nafari | <i>Call to the first prayer</i>        |
| Asuba              | <i>Dawn</i>                            |
| Gari ya waye       | <i>Dawn</i>                            |
| Sasafe             | <i>Very early morning</i>              |
| Safe               | <i>Morning (generally)</i>             |
| Hantsi             | <i>About 8 a.m.</i>                    |
| Walaha             | <i>About 10 a.m.</i>                   |
| Rana               | <i>Day time generally</i>              |
| Rana tsaka         | <i>Midday, noon</i>                    |
| Zowall             | <i>Time soon after midday</i>          |
| Azuhur             | <i>About 2 p.m.</i>                    |
| Laasar             | <i>About 5 p.m.</i>                    |
| Maguriba           | <i>Evening</i>                         |
| Mareche            | <i>Evening</i>                         |
| Lisha              | <i>About 7 p.m., just after sunset</i> |
| Fadua-r-rana       | <i>Sunset</i>                          |
| Dere               | <i>Night</i>                           |
| Tsaka-n-dere       | <i>Midnight</i>                        |
| Kwana              | <i>Sleep. A day of 24 hours</i>        |

*Verbs, etc., used idiomatically**Che*

|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| Akache da shi | <i>It was called a . . .</i> |
| Yache da su   | <i>He said to them</i>       |

*Chika*

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Chika bindiga       | <i>Load a gun</i>                |
| Wotsika ya chika    | <i>The letter is finished</i>    |
| Chika mini alkaweli | <i>Fulfil your promise to me</i> |

*Chi*

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Chi gari            | <i>Conquer the country</i>                        |
| Chi kasua           | <i>To market</i>                                  |
| Anachin kasua       | <i>Market is on</i>                               |
| Kasua ta chi        | <i>”</i>  |
| Fataki sun chi riba | <i>The merchants made a profit</i>                |
| Na chi              | <i>I take it (in gambling) or I win</i>           |
| Ku chi gaba kadan   | <i>Go a little in front</i>                       |
| Chi sarota          | <i>Succeed to the sovereignty</i>                 |
| Chi lafia           | <i>To get into safety : enjoy peace</i>           |
| Chi amana           | <i>Misappropriate a trust. Lit., Eat a pledge</i> |
| Chi laya            | <i>Swear on the Koran</i>                         |
| Chi ado             | <i>Adorn oneself</i>                              |

*Da* (summary of various meanings)

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Da          | Relative pronoun, short of "wanda"  |
| Da          | <i>Son</i>  |
| Da          | <i>Native of</i> , as in "da-n-Kano"  |
| Da          | Diminutive, as "da-n-zane," <i>a piece of cloth</i> ; "da-n-kasua," <i>a little market</i> ; "da-n-tumkia," <i>lamb</i> |
| Da          | <i>Freeborn</i>   |
| Da          | <i>And</i>  |
| Dā          | <i>Of old, formerly</i>   |
| Da          | <i>With</i>   |
| Da          | <i>When (=saanda)</i>   |
| Da . . . da | <i>Had I . . . I should (not)</i>   |
| Da          | <i>Than</i>   |

*Dama*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Hanu-n-dama                                  | <i>Right hand</i>  |
| Da dama                                      | <i>A little more</i>   |
| Ya yi dama                                   | <i>It were better</i>  |
| Da dama dama                                 | <i>Moderately</i>  |
| Na ji dama kadan                             | <i>I feel a little better</i>  |
| Gobe ina zua idan na samu dama               | <i>I shall come to-morrow if I get the chance</i>                              |
| Ka yi abinda ka ga dama                      | <i>Do whatever you think best</i>  |
| Ba ni da dama                                | <i>I have no time to . . .</i>   |
| Dama mun so zua birni bale sariki ya aiko    | <i>We wished all the more to go to the city now that the chief sent for us</i> |
| Ka ji dama ya fi jia ?                       | <i>Do you feel better than yesterday ?</i>                                     |
| Dā ni talaka ne, yanzu na samu dukia da dama | <i>Formerly I was poor, now I am better off</i>                                |

*Damre (daure)*

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| Daura kuka   | <i>Raise a cry</i>     |
| Daura ido    | <i>Frown</i>           |
| Daura gudu   | <i>Take up running</i> |
| Daura magana | <i>Keep one's word</i> |

*Dau, do=dauka.* Mostly used in Poetry

|                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Dau Allah, dau Anabi !       | <i>By God and the Prophet !</i> |
| Wajib mu do hayasu (=hainya) | <i>We must take their road</i>  |

*Kai, carry*

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Ba shi kai ba                     | <i>It will not do</i>                            |
| Ba shi kai hakanan ba             | <i>This will not do</i>                          |
| Jibi mua kai gida                 | <i>The day after to-morrow we shall get home</i> |
| Allah ya worike chiniyansa ta kai | <i>God cured his thigh, it became all right</i>  |

Kowa ya nomi hatsi (ya) kai      *Every one who sows corn (i.e., good deeds) reaches the great city (heaven)*  
 baba-n-gari (poet.)

Gobe da safe na kaika wurinda      *To-morrow I will take you to the place which they went to to take a walk*  
 suna bi suna yawo

(“ Kai ” does not necessarily mean to actually carry)

Enna rana ta kai kana mu kai      *Where will the sun be when we reach Kano? It will be there*  
 Kano? Zata kai chan

Suka iske gulbi, ya kawo      *They came to a water course in the bush, it had water in it*  
 rua achikin daji

### Kara

Ina kara daia      *I add one*  
 Ban kara ba zakua      *I shall not come again*  
 Ba ya kara ba chewa      *He said no more*  
 Aikinsu zaakarasu      *Their work shall be increased*  
 Sun che jirigi-n-kasan ba shi kara      *They said the train shall not come again from Lagos*  
 tafowa daga Iku  
 Allahu shi kara maka alberka      *May God increase his blessing on you*

Zaki ya yi kuka so-daia, ba shi      *The lion cried once, he did not do so again, he died*  
 kara ba, ya mutu

Ba shi kara ganinsa      *He saw him no more*

Ba ya kara tashi ba har . . .      *He did not get up again until . . .*

Ba ta kara koma garesa      *She did not return to him again*

NOTE.—*The noun form of the verb is required after “kara.”*

### Maida

Ma maida kansa      *He professes*  
 Ya maida kamna gareta      *He liked him*  
 Ya mayesda magana      *He answered*  
 Suka mayar (=mayas) da mag-      *They replied and said to them*  
 ana, suka che masu

Ka mayes      *Bring (it) back*  
 Ina mayesda wane      *I became like so-and-so*  
 Ya maishe shi      *He transformed him*  
 Yungwa ta ke maida yaro tsofo      *Hunger turns a boy into an old man*

### Sha

Sha hiska      *Take the air*  
 Sha enua      *Enjoy the shade*  
 Sha wohalla      *Get into trouble*  
 Sha taba      *Smoke tobacco*

*Sa*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ya sa masu wuta   | <i>He set fire to them</i>  |
| Na sa ka dilalina   | <i>I make you my agent</i>  |
| Ni sashi tafi chikin jirigi, koda<br>shi yerda ko ba yerda ba | <i>I will make him get into the boat<br/>whether he is willing or not</i> |
| Shi ya sa na tashi  | <i>He made me get up</i>  |
| Sa kasa   | <i>Put it down</i>  |
| Ya sashi chikin sanfo   | <i>He placed it in the basket</i>   |
| Na sa wando baki  | <i>I wore black trousers</i>  |
| Sariki ya sa akadaura doki surdi                              | <i>The chief made them saddle the<br/>horse</i>                           |

NOTE.—“*Sa*” has a causative force which may be translated in English “*make*” or “*do*.” “*Yi*” is not used in this sense.

*Samu*

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Hainya ta samu                   | <i>There is a road</i>                 |
| Na samu lafia                    | <i>I am better</i>                     |
| Har su samu amsa                 | <i>Until they reply</i>                |
| Na samesa shina karatu wotikanka | <i>I found him writing your letter</i> |

*Saura*

This is a noun meaning “remainder,” “rest.”

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ya yi saura kadan                       | <i>There is a little left</i>                              |
| I, saura igia biu adamre                | <i>Yes, it still wants two ropes to tie<br/>them</i>       |
| Da matansa saura shi daia               | <i>And of his wives there was only<br/>left one to him</i> |
| Ba sauran kwanaki dayawa nan<br>gaba ba | <i>In not many days' time</i>                              |

*Various uses of “Yi,” do, make.*

Some of its uses are very idiomatic. One variation of form is found—namely, “*yiwu*.”

*Independent*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Na yi                        | <i>I did it</i>  |
| Na yi                        | <i>He did it or it will do, it is<br/>satisfactory</i>       |
| Suna fada da juna ? Sun a yi | <i>Are they fighting amongst them-<br/>selves ? They are</i> |
| Ku yi ta yi                  | <i>Go on with what you are doing</i>                         |
| Mu yi ta yi                  | <i>We will get to work</i>                                   |
| Ku yi ta tafia               | <i>Go on</i>   |
| Kaka zaka yi ?               | <i>How will you manage ?</i>                                 |
| Kamada shi ke yi             | <i>How it is done</i>  |
| Rana ta yi                   | <i>It is daylight</i>  |

*With Direct Object*

|                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Na yi shi                 | <i>I have done it</i>               |
| Mun yi shi da kasa        | <i>We made it of earth</i>          |
| Kana yi magana Hausa ?    | <i>Do you speak Hausa ?</i>         |
| Mun yi abuta da ni da shi | <i>He and I have become friends</i> |
| Har ya yi sainyi          | <i>Until it gets cool</i>           |

“Yi” joined with nouns is often translatable by a single verb in English, as—

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Yi magana   | <i>to speak</i>    |
| Yi zanche   | <i>to converse</i> |
| Yi aiki     | <i>to work</i>     |
| Yi munafiki | <i>to deceive</i>  |
| Yi godia,   | <i>to thank</i>    |
| Yi tafia    | <i>to journey</i>  |
| Yi girima   | <i>to grow</i>     |
| Yi alheri   | <i>to rejoice</i>  |
| Yi sata     | <i>to steal</i>    |

All of these phrases take indirect objects with prepositions. The indirect object is placed between “yi” and the noun it is attached to if the preposition in question is “ma,” *to*, but after if the preposition is “da,” *with*.

*Without Indirect Object*

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Zuchiana ya yi fari           | <i>My heart rejoiced</i>                     |
| Zua mutua Ahmadu ya yi sariki | <i>On the death of Ahmadu he became king</i> |
| Ya yi girima                  | <i>He has grown up</i>                       |
| Ya yi arziki                  | <i>It is fortunate</i>                       |
| Ya yi keao                    | <i>It is good : that is all right</i>        |
| Ya yi nauyi                   | <i>It is heavy</i>                           |
| Yaro ya yi kama-n-uwansa      | <i>The boy is like his mother</i>            |
| Ya yi karatu wonga wochika    | <i>He wrote this letter (double object)</i>  |

*With Indirect Object**Ma*

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Ya yi mani munafiki      | <i>He cheated (betrayed, deceived) me</i> |
| Na yi masa alheri        | <i>I treated him kindly</i>               |
| Ya yi mani alkawali      | <i>He made me a promise</i>               |
| Sun yi masa sata         | <i>They stole from him</i>                |
| Sariki ya yi masa kaliye | <i>The king gave him an order</i>         |
| Ya yi mani gudumawa      | <i>He came to my help</i>                 |

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Giwa, anyi mata rauni a kafa<br>guda | <i>The elephant was only wounded in<br/>one leg</i> |
| Karia ka ke yi mani                  | <i>You are lying to me</i>                          |
| Ya yi mani takarda                   | <i>He wrote me a letter</i>                         |
| Kada ka yi mani karia                | <i>Do not lie to me</i>                             |

*Da*

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Ku yi magana da su | <i>Talk to them</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------|

*Na*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Ya yi mantuwa-r-suna-n-da<br>zomo ya fada masa | <i>He forgot the name that the hare<br/>told him</i> |
|--|--|

*“ Yi ” with Nouns used as Prepositions and Adverbs*

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| Ku yi kusa | <i>Come near</i> |
| Ya yi nisa | <i>It is far</i> |

*With adverbs*

|          |                                    |
|----------|------------------------------------|
| Yi massa | <i>Make haste or do it quickly</i> |
|----------|------------------------------------|

*“ Yi ” with Expressions of Time*

|                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Lokachi ya yi mu tashi          | <i>It is time, let us start</i>       |
| Da rana ta yi ya mutu           | <i>When it was daylight he died</i>   |
| Shekarunsa nawa ? ya yi shekara | <i>How old is he ? He is five. Oh</i> |
| bial. Aa, ba ya yi ba           | <i>no, he is not</i>                  |
| Rana ta yi                      | <i>It is daylight</i>                 |
| Ya yi shekara biu               | <i>It is two years</i>                |
| Ka yi rana                      | <i>You are late</i>                   |
| Ya yi kwana bokoi               | <i>A week passed</i>                  |

*“ Yi ” with the sense of “ too much ”*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ya yi mani yawa                          | <i>They are too many for me</i>           |
| Rafi nan ya yi masa fadi                 | <i>That river is too broad for it</i>     |
| Riga nan ta yi mani kadan (or<br>karami) | <i>The coat is too small for me</i>       |
| Gidanga ya yi kankane                    | <i>This house is small (or too small)</i> |
| Kun yi yawa                              | <i>You were very many</i>                 |

*Miscellaneous*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Zuchiansa ya yi biu   | <i>Doubt was in his heart</i>                                     |
| Yi itache   | <i>Cut or get firewood</i>  |
| Wannan ya yi wanchan  | <i>This equals that</i>   |
| Anayi da shi  | <i>He is being set upon</i>                                       |
| Beri kashi chikin chiki ba shi yi<br>maganin yungwa (prov.) | <i>To leave excrement in the belly is<br/>not food for hunger</i> |
| Funtu ya yi darial maitsuma<br>(prov.)                      | <i>The naked man laughs at the<br/>ragged man</i>                 |

*Example of the Form "yiwu"*

Ta'ala da ya yiwota

*The exalted one who made it*

"Yi" takes what seems to be the suffix "da" (see derived verbs, class 5) in the sharpened form "ta." If this etymology be correct, it is not in accordance with the common phonetic rules of the language.

Ku yita yi

*Go on with what you are doing*

Ku yita tafia !

*March !*

Ku yita tuba !

*Repent !*

Yita aiki

*Accomplish the work*

Ku yita kanku

*Do that which appertains to you  
or do as you like*

In Sokoto, Zanfara, and Katsina "wo" is commonly used for "yi," as "wo takarda," *send a letter*; "wo yaki," *wage war*.

*Examples of Circumlocution*

Sariki ya rassu

*The chief is dead**but,* Doki ya mutu*The horse is dead*

Abokina ba shi da lafia

*My friend is ill*

Wazirin Sokoto ba ya gani yanzu

*The vizier of Sokoto is blind*

Abokina ba shi da kafa

*My friend is lame**but,* Guragu ne*In speaking of a horse being lame*

Kaka iyalinka ?

*How is your family ? (instead of  
asking after a man's wife)*



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

SCHOEN, J. F.

- Vocabulary of the Hausa Language and Grammar (1843).
- Grammar of the Hausa Language (1862).
- Dictionary of the Hausa Language (1876).
- Appendix to Dictionary of the Hausa Language (1888).
- Magana Hausa (1885).

ROBINSON, C.

- Hausa Language, 1st edition (1897).
- 2nd edition (1909).
- Hausa Dictionary, 1st edition (I. 1899 and II. 1900).
- 2nd edition (1906) (Hausa-English only)
- Specimen of Hausa Literature (1896).

MILLER, W. R. Hausa Notes (1901).

MISCHLICH, A. Lehrbuch der hausanischen Sprache (1902).

EDGAR, F. Litafi na tatsuniyoyi na Hausa (1911).

HARRIS, H. Hausa Stories (1907).

CHARLTON, L. A Hausa Reading Book (1908).

Printed at  
The Edinburgh Press  
9 and 11 Young Street.

## FROM KEGAN PAUL & CO.'S LIST

- A Hausa Grammar**, with Exercises, Readings, and Vocabularies. By Rev. Canon CHARLES H. ROBINSON, M.A., sometime Lecturer in Hausa in the University of Cambridge, and Major J. ALDER BURDON, C.M.G., M.A., Resident of Sokoto Province, N. Nigeria. *Fourth Edition*. Crown 8vo. 5s. net.
- Hausa Proverbs**, including Riddles and Common Expressions, with some Grammatical Notes. By Captain G. MERRICK, R.G.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.
- English-Hausa Vocabulary**. By Captain A. H. W. HAYWOOD, R.A. *Second and Enlarged Edition*, containing nearly 1,400 words in every-day use. F'cap 8vo. Paper Cover. 2s. net.
- A Grammar of the Angass Language**, with Vocabulary, etc. By Captain H. D. FOULKES.
- Handbook of Modern Arabic**, consisting of a Grammar, with numerous Examples, Dialogues, and Newspaper Extracts, printed in roman type. By FRANCIS W. NEWMAN, Emeritus Professor, University College, London. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- Grammar of the Arabic Language**. By the Rev. R. STERLING, M.A. Printed in Arabic and Roman types. Demy 8vo. 12s. net.
- Arabic and English Idiom**. Conversational and Literary. A companion to the above. Demy 8vo. 7s. net.
- Arabic - English Dictionary**. By H. ANTHONY SALMONÉ, Lecturer at University College, London. Comprising about 120,000 Arabic words, with English Index of about 50,000 words. 2 vols. Large Crown 8vo. 36s.
- Comparative Handbook of Congo Languages**. A comparative Grammar of the eight principal languages of the district, and of Swahili, with a Vocabulary of 800 words with their English equivalents, etc. By W. HENRY STAPLETON. Demy 8vo. 6s. net.
- Grammar of the Somali Language**. By Rev. Fr. E. DE LARAJASSE and Ven. Fr. C. DE SAMPONT. Crown 8vo. 12s. net.
- Somali-English and English-Somali Dictionary**. By Rev. Fr. E. DE LARAJASSE. Crown 8vo. 12s. net.
- Dictionary of the Swahili Language**. By the Rev. Dr L. KRAPF, C.M.S., with an outline of the Grammar. Med. 8vo. 30s. net.





**UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY, LOS ANGELES  
EDUCATION AND PSYCHOLOGY LIBRARY**

**This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.**

University of California, Los Angeles



L 005 462 915 9

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 001 079 329 7

